Foreword

Andrew Adonis and Beverley Hughes

Being able to read is the most important skill children will learn during their early schooling and has far-reaching implications for lifelong confidence and well-being.

The independent review of early reading conducted by Jim Rose confirmed that ‘high quality phonic work’ should be the prime means for teaching children how to read and spell words. The review also highlighted the importance of developing from the earliest stages children’s speaking and listening skills, ensuring that beginner readers are ready to get off to a good start in phonic work by the age of five. Such work should be set within a broad and rich language curriculum.

All these considerations are reflected in the renewed Primary Framework which is currently being implemented, and in the Early Years Foundation Stage which takes effect in September 2008. We are now publishing the Primary National Strategy’s new phonics resource Letters and Sounds: Principles and Practice of High Quality Phonics, replacing Progression in Phonics and Playing with Sounds which are being withdrawn. Letters and Sounds is a high quality phonics resource which encapsulates the reading review recommendations, meets our published core criteria which define a high quality phonics programme, and takes account of the best practice seen in our most successful early years settings and schools.

Both the Primary Framework and the Early Years Foundation Stage mark significant steps in our drive to raise standards and personalise learning so that all our children achieve their full potential. Letters and Sounds, with its alignment to both documents, gives early years practitioners and teachers a powerful phonics teaching tool to ensure that young children are well-placed to read and spell words with fluency and confidence by the time they reach the end of Key Stage 1. This is an entitlement we all want to achieve for every child.

Andrew Adonis
Parliamentary Under-Secretary of State for Schools

Rt Hon Beverley Hughes
Minister of State for Children, Young People and Families
Letters and Sounds: Principles and Practice of High Quality Phonics

Letters and Sounds: Principles and Practice of High Quality Phonics comprises:

- Notes of guidance for practitioners and teachers;
- a Six-phase Teaching Programme;
- a DVD illustrating effective practice for the phases;
- a poster showing the principles of high quality phonic work.

These notes of guidance are designed to help practitioners and teachers use Letters and Sounds in conjunction with the Six-phase Teaching Programme. The notes are in two parts:

Part 1: Introduction;

Part 2: Principles of high quality phonic work underlying the six phases.

Part 1: Introduction

What is the Letters and Sounds programme?

Letters and Sounds is designed to help practitioners and teachers teach children how the alphabet works for reading and spelling by:

- fostering children’s speaking and listening skills as valuable in their own right and as preparatory to learning phonic knowledge and skills;
- teaching high quality phonic work at the point they judge children should begin the programme. For most children, this will be by the age of five with the intention of equipping them with the phonic knowledge and skills they need to become fluent readers by the age of seven.

Practitioners and teachers will find it helpful to familiarise themselves with the ‘simple view of reading’ (see page 9). The ‘simple view’ shows that, to become proficient readers and writers, children must develop both word recognition and language comprehension. The Letters and Sounds programme focuses on securing word recognition skills as these are essential for children to decode (read) and encode (spell) words accurately with ease, and so concentrate on comprehending and composing text.

---

Phonics is a means to an end. Systematic, high quality phonics teaching is essential, but more is needed for children to achieve the goal of reading, which is comprehension. Letters and Sounds is designed as a time-limited programme of phonic work aimed at securing fluent word recognition skills for reading by the end of Key Stage 1, although the teaching and learning of spelling, which children generally find harder than reading, will continue. Practitioners and teachers must bear in mind that throughout the programme children need to understand the purpose of learning phonics and have lots of opportunities to apply their developing skills in interesting and engaging reading and writing activities.

In choosing a phonic programme, be it Letters and Sounds, another published programme or their own programme, settings and schools are encouraged to apply the criteria for high quality phonic work (see page 8 of these Notes).

**Progress from learning to read to reading to learn**

Letters and Sounds is fully compatible with the wider, language-rich early years curriculum. It will help practitioners and teachers adapt their teaching to the range of children’s developing abilities that is common in most settings and primary classes. The aim is to make sure that all children make progress at a pace that befits their enlarging capabilities.

For ease of planning, the Letters and Sounds programme is structured in six phases that broadly follow the Primary National Strategy’s *Progression and Pace* (Ref: 03855-2006BKT-EN) published in September 2006. However, in Letters and Sounds the boundaries between the phases are deliberately porous so that no children are held back, or unduly pressured to move on before they are equipped to do so. It follows that practitioners and teachers will need to make principled decisions based on reliable assessments of children’s learning to inform planning for progression within and across the phases.

Letters and Sounds enables children to see the relationship between reading and spelling from an early stage, such that the teaching of one reinforces understanding of the other. Decoding (reading) and encoding (spelling) are treated as reversible processes.

However, children generally secure accurate word reading before they secure comparable accuracy in spelling. It follows that the teaching and learning of spelling will need to continue beyond Phase Six.
The Independent Review of the teaching of early reading, the Early Years Foundation Stage and the Primary National Strategy

Letters and Sounds is founded on the principles of the Independent Review of the teaching of early reading. It aligns with and builds on the renewed Primary Framework and the Early Years Foundation Stage which reflect these principles. It replaces the National Literacy Strategy’s Progression in Phonics: Materials for Whole-class Teaching (Ref: 0126/2001), and the Primary National Strategy’s Playing with Sounds: A Supplement to Progression in Phonics (Ref: 0280-2004). It retains valued elements from those documents that practitioners and teachers have told us they would find helpful if brought together in one publication.

In 2006, the Review recommended systematic, ‘high quality phonic work’ as the prime means for teaching beginner readers to learn to read. The Review also emphasised the importance of fostering speaking and listening skills from birth onwards in the home environment, in early years settings and in schools, making full use of the great variety of rich opportunities for developing children’s language that all these provide.

The Review also affirms that children’s acquisition of speaking and listening skills, and phonic knowledge and skills, are greatly enhanced by a ‘multi-sensory’ approach. Examples of multi-sensory activities are given in the phases and in the DVD accompanying the Six-phase Teaching Programme. Early years practitioners will be fully familiar with this type of activity and the value it adds to other areas of learning and development in the Early Years Foundation Stage.

All of these considerations are embedded in the Primary Framework, in the Early Years Foundation Stage and in Letters and Sounds.

Progression and pace

The importance of flexibility

Although the six-phase structure provides a useful map from which to plan children’s progress, the boundaries between the phases should not be regarded as fixed. Guided by reliable assessments of children’s developing knowledge and skills, practitioners and teachers will need to judge the rate at which their children are able to progress through the phases and adapt the pace accordingly. As with much else in the early years, some children will be capable of, and benefit from, learning at a faster pace than their peers whereas others may need more time and support to secure their learning.

References: Independent Review of the teaching of early reading, Final Report, Jim Rose, 2006 (referred to throughout these Notes as ‘the Review’); The Primary Framework for Literacy and Mathematics (DfES 02011-2006BOC-EN); The Early Years Foundation Stage Statutory Framework (Ref: 00014-2007BKT-EN)
The following are examples of where this applies:

- the pace at which the 26 letters of the alphabet are taught;
- the introduction of digraphs;
- the introduction of adjacent consonants – practitioners and teachers may find that some children can benefit from learning about adjacent consonants earlier than is suggested in the phase structure.

In each case, and as a general principle, the pace at which it is suggested that children progress through the phases should be taken as a guide rather than applied rigidly. The programme is incremental so that successful prior learning will very largely determine the pace of children’s progress.

Using the six-phase structure flexibly is particularly important in the case of the boundary between Phases One and Two. For example, it may not be necessary to complete all seven aspects of Phase One before starting systematic phonic work in Phase Two. Practitioners and teachers should use their professional judgement to decide at what point children are ready to move on, as well as recognising that elements of Phase One can be valuable to run alongside and complement the work in Phase Two.

Obviously, practitioners and teachers will not want children to be held back who are clearly ready to begin Phase Two, or, equally, begin such work if they judge children need further preparatory work to ensure that they can succeed from the start.

The programme is rooted in widely accepted best practice for the Early Years Foundation Stage in which a high priority is placed on the development of children’s speaking and listening skills as important in their own right, as well as for preparing the way for the teaching and learning of reading and writing. It is essential for practitioners and teachers to make principled, professional judgements about children’s different and developing abilities to decide when they should start systematic phonic work and the pace at which they progress through the programme.

Making a good start – Phase One

The importance of getting children off to a good start cannot be overstated so practitioners and teachers are urged to take particular account of the following points related to Phases One and Two.

Phase One recognises the central importance of developing speaking and listening skills as a priority in their own right and for paving the way to making a good start on reading and writing. Put simply, the more words children know and understand before they start on a systematic programme of phonic work the better equipped they are to succeed.

Phase One therefore relies on providing a broad and rich language experience for children which is the hallmark of good early years practice. In this phase and thereafter children should be enjoyably engaged in worthwhile learning activities that encourage them to talk a lot, to increase their stock of words and to improve their command of dialogue.
The activities in Phase One that exemplify this approach are set out in seven aspects as described in the guidance notes at the beginning of that phase.

Key features of a rich curriculum which are essential to Phase One and beyond are the range and depth of language experienced by the children. Good teaching will exploit, for example, the power of story, rhyme, drama and song to fire children’s imagination and interest, thus encouraging them to use language copiously. It will also make sure that they benefit from hearing and using language from non-fictional as well as fictional sources. Interesting investigations and information, for example from scientific and historical sources, often appeal strongly to young children, capturing the interest of boys as well as girls and helping to prepare the way for them to move easily and successfully into reading and writing. When taught well children will take pride in their success but, as practitioners and teachers know well, they also benefit strongly from consistent praise for effort and achievement with the aim of making their learning as rewarding as possible.

**Additional support**

High quality phonic teaching can substantially reduce the number of children at risk of falling below age-related expectations for reading. Moreover, the focus on ‘quality first’ teaching should help to reduce the need for supplementary programmes. However, some children may experience transitory or longer-term conditions such as hearing, visual or speech impairments. Even a mild, fluctuating hearing loss can hinder normal communication development, slow children’s progress and lead to feelings of failure and social isolation. Obviously, as with concerns about any aspect of children’s physical condition, risks to their communication and language development must be shared with parents or carers so that the situation can be fully investigated and professional help sought. Where hearing loss, for example, has been ruled out and practitioners and parents or carers continue to have concerns about a child’s development, advice should be sought from the local speech and language therapy service.

**Children learning English as an additional language**

The emphasis given to speaking and listening in the programme and especially in Phase One will help practitioners to strengthen provision for children learning English as an additional language. Listening to lengthy stretches of language where both the speaker and the topic are unfamiliar makes great demands on children for whom English is a new language. A familiar speaker using imaginative resources to stimulate talk about a topic which the children already know something about will provide a more helpful context for these children. Equally, the programme offers many opportunities for planned adult-led and child-initiated small-group and partner work to encourage these children to communicate in English as early as possible.
Systematic high quality phonics – Phase Two

Phase Two marks the beginning of systematic, high quality phonics work. (See Appendix 1, on page 18, for relevant working terminology.) This is best taught in short, discrete daily sessions, with ample opportunities for children to use and apply their phonics knowledge and skills throughout the day. Right from the start, however, every child will need to experience success moving incrementally from the simple to the more complex aspects of phonics work. Phase Two therefore starts with a tried and tested approach to learning a selection of letters (‘s’, ‘a’, ‘t’, ‘p’, ‘i’, ‘n’) and emphasises multi-sensory activity. Letters and Sounds is designed to help practitioners and teachers track children’s progress and should enable them to make reliable assessments for learning within and across the phases.

As noted, each phase in the six-phase structure dovetails with the next. The teaching programme for reading is time-limited and should end with the completion of Phase Six when the great majority of children will have mastered decoding print. Thereafter, by reading extensively, they will continue to hone their phonics skills and increase the pace of their reading. Acquiring proficiency in spelling for most children is unlikely to keep pace with acquiring proficiency in reading. Spelling will, therefore, require further development beyond Phase Six.

Each of the six phases suggests activities for teaching phonics knowledge and skills incrementally. These activities are illustrative examples. They do not constitute a total set of daily lesson plans. For example, in teaching letter recognition in Phase Two, the letter ‘s’ is taken to illustrate how to teach a discrete phoneme and its corresponding grapheme. Practitioners and teachers can apply this model to teaching the other letters of the alphabet in the order given in the programme, starting with ‘s’, ‘a’, ‘t’, ‘p’, ‘i’, ‘n’.

Manipulating letters: multi-sensory learning

The processes of segmenting and blending for reading and spelling need to be made enjoyable and easy for children to understand and apply. Well-timed multi-sensory activities serve this purpose and intensify learning. One easily available resource that has proved very effective in this respect is a set of solid, magnetic letters that can be manipulated on small whiteboards by children, as individuals or in pairs. These have the advantages, for example, of enabling children to:

- recognise letters by touch, sight and sounding out simultaneously;
- easily manipulate letters to form and re-form the same sets of letters into different words;
- compose words by manipulating letters even though children may not yet be able to write them, for example with a pencil;
- share the activity and talk about it with a partner;
- build up knowledge of grapheme–phoneme correspondences systematically.

These resources also provide practitioners and teachers with an easy means to monitor children’s progress.
Principles of high quality phonic work and choosing a phonics programme

In March 2007, the Department for Education and Skills published a list of criteria which define ‘high quality phonic work’. The criteria are based on those identified by the Review and developed through a consultation process. The Department also published guidance for settings and schools on how to apply the criteria to help them choose a commercial programme. The Department additionally published a self-assessment template for publishers to assess and publish the extent to which their schemes meet these criteria in order to inform schools’ choices. The criteria for high quality phonic work, guidance for settings and schools about how to apply them, and publishers’ self-assessments can be found at www.standards.dfes.gov.uk/phonics.

The Letters and Sounds programme, particularly Phases Two to Six, has been developed in accordance with the criteria. Settings and schools can use Letters and Sounds to support their phonics teaching, choose a commercial programme that they judge matches the criteria, or use programmes developed by themselves or by others in their local area that also match the criteria.

Different programmes – similar principles

The principles underlying Letters and Sounds are common to other phonic programmes. However, other programmes may cover the same phonic content in different ways as well as offering a wide range of teaching materials to support the programme, such as extra teaching resources, and materials for use by children and parents or carers. Settings and schools will wish to decide which programme to use, bearing in mind that the most important consideration is whether the programme meets the criteria for high quality phonic work.

Fidelity to the programme

Whichever programme they choose, settings and schools should bear in mind the importance of following the sequence of the phonic content in the programme consistently from start to finish. This approach is most likely to secure optimum progress in children’s acquisition of phonic knowledge and skills, whereas mixing parts of different sequences from more than one programme can slow their progress.

Adhering to the sequence of phonic content of the programme does not, however, prevent settings and schools from supplementing their chosen programme by using additional resources, such as flashcards and mnemonics, which they make themselves or purchase from commercial sources.
Part 2: Principles of high quality phonic work underlying the six phases

The ‘simple view of reading’

Letters and Sounds is based on the ‘simple view of reading’ outlined in the Review, which identifies two dimensions of reading – ‘word recognition’ and ‘language comprehension’.


See also the Primary National Strategy core position paper on the ‘simple view of reading’ (Ref: 03855-2006BKT-EN).

All but a very few children understand a great deal of spoken language long before they start learning to read. In order to comprehend text, however, children must first learn to recognise, that is to say, decode, the words on the page. Once they can do this, they can use the same processes to make sense of written text as they use to understand spoken language. The ‘simple view’ shows that word recognition (decoding) and language comprehension are both necessary for proficient reading. However, the balance between the two changes as children acquire decoding skills, and progress from learning to read to reading to learn for information and pleasure.
Phonics is concerned with the word recognition dimension of the ‘simple view of reading’. The purpose of high quality phonic teaching is for children to secure the crucial skills of word decoding that lead to fluent and automatic reading, thus freeing them to concentrate on the meaning of the text.

**Principles of high quality phonic work**

Following Phase One with its emphasis on speaking and listening, Phases Two to Six of Letters and Sounds are designed as a robust programme of high quality phonic work to be taught systematically. It is recommended that this is done for a discrete period of time – around 20 minutes – on a daily basis, as the prime approach to teaching children how to read and spell words. Good practice also shows that children benefit from encouragement to apply their developing phonic skills as opportunities arise across the curriculum throughout the day.

Phonic work should be regarded as an essential body of knowledge, skills and understanding that has to be learned largely through direct instruction, rather than as one of several methods of choice.

**Beginner readers should be taught:**

- grapheme–phoneme correspondences in a clearly defined, incremental sequence (see Appendix 1, page 19 where grapheme–phoneme correspondences are explained);
- to apply the highly important skill of blending (synthesising) phonemes in the order in which they occur, all through the word to read it;
- to apply the skills of segmenting words into their constituent phonemes to spell;
- that blending and segmenting are reversible processes.

**The teaching of high quality phonic work: overview of the phases**

(See Appendix 3 for a table summarising the phases.)

**Phase One** supports the development of speaking and listening as crucially important in its own right and for paving the way for high quality phonic work. For ease of reference more detailed notes are included at the start of Phase One in the Six-phase Teaching Programme.

**Phase Two** marks the start of systematic phonic work. It begins the introduction of grapheme–phoneme correspondences (GPCs). Decoding for reading and encoding for spelling are taught as reversible processes. As soon as the first few correspondences have been learned, children are taught to blend and segment with them. Blending means merging individual phonemes together into whole words; segmenting is the reverse...
process of splitting up whole spoken words into individual phonemes. Earlier, in Phase One, blending and segmenting activities have been purely oral, involving no letters, for example, an adult pronounces the sounds to be blended rather than expecting the children to pronounce them in response to letters. In Phase Two, however, the children learn to pronounce the sounds themselves in response to letters, before blending them, and thus start reading simple VC and CVC words (see ‘Working Terms’, page 20). The reverse process is that they segment whole spoken words into phonemes and select letters to represent those phonemes, either writing the letters, if they have the necessary physical coordination, or using solid (e.g. magnetic) letters to encode words.

Phase Three completes the teaching of the alphabet, and children move on to sounds represented by more than one letter, learning one representation for each of at least 42 of the 44 phonemes generally recognised as those of British Received Pronunciation (RP), as shown in the table below. Just one spelling is given for each because this is all that is required in Phase Three, but in the case of some vowel spellings represented by combinations of letters, spellings other than those given would have been equally good first choices (e.g. ‘ay’ instead of ‘ai’ and ‘ie’ instead of ‘igh’).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant phonemes, with sample words</th>
<th>Vowel phonemes, with sample words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. /b/ – bat</td>
<td>13. /s/ – sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. /k/ – cat</td>
<td>14. /t/ – tap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. /d/ – dog</td>
<td>15. /v/ – van</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. /f/ – fan</td>
<td>16. /w/ – wig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. /g/ – go</td>
<td>17. /y/ – yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. /h/ – hen</td>
<td>18. /z/ – zip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. /j/ – jet</td>
<td>19. /sh/ – shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. /l/ – leg</td>
<td>20. /ch/ – chip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. /m/ – map</td>
<td>21. /th/ – thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. /n/ – net</td>
<td>22. /th/ – then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. /p/ – pen</td>
<td>23. /ng/ – ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. /r/ – rat</td>
<td>24. /zh/ – vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. /a/ – ant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. /e/ – egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. /i/ – in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. /o/ – on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. /u/ – up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. /ai/ – rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. /ee/ – feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. /igh/ – night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. /oa/ – boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. /oo/ – boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. /oo/ – look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12. /ow/ – cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. /oi/ – coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14. /ar/ – farm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15. /or/ – for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16. /ur/ – hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17. /air/ – fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18. /ear/ – dear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19. /ure/ – sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20. /e/ – corner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A fuller picture of grapheme–phoneme correspondences is given in Appendix 2, page 21.

In Phase Four children learn to read and spell words containing adjacent consonants. Many children may be capable of taking this step much earlier, in which case they should not be held back from doing so. No new grapheme–phoneme correspondences are taught in this phase.

³ The grapheme ‘zh’ does not occur in English words, but /zh/ is a logical way of representing this isolated phoneme on paper: there is no other simple and obvious way, and the phoneme is the ‘buzzing’ (voiced) version of the ‘whispery’ (unvoiced) sound /sh/, just as /z/ is the voiced version of /s/. Because this sound does not occur in simple CVC words, however, it can be omitted in Phase Three.

⁴ This phoneme does not occur in all accents. It occurs only if people pronounce words such as sure and poor with an /ooer/ vowel sound, not if they pronounce them as shaw and paw. It, too, can be omitted in Phase Three, and perhaps even permanently.
Phase Five would not be needed if there were a perfect one-to-one mapping between graphemes and phonemes – the above table would be all that was necessary. English is unlike most other languages, however, as many of the mappings are one-to-several in both directions: that is to say, most phonemes can be spelled in more than one way, and most graphemes can represent more than one phoneme. Appendix 2, page 21 gives a reasonably full, though not exhaustive, overview of the alternatives. Teachers should treat this as a resource to be used as needed rather than as a list of items to be worked through slavishly with all children.

In Phase Six, reading for the great majority of children should become automatic. However, proficiency with spelling usually lags behind proficiency with reading. This is because spelling requires recalling and composing the word from memory without seeing it. Reading and spelling become less easily reversible as children start working with words containing sounds (particularly vowel sounds) which can be spelled in more than one way. Phase Six is a good time to focus more sharply on word-specific spellings and broad guidelines for making choices between spelling alternatives.

**Implications of high quality phonic work for reading done by children outside the discrete phonic session**

Extensive practice at sounding and blending (decoding) will soon enable many children to start reading words automatically: this applies both to words they have often decoded and to high frequency words (e.g. *the*, *to*, *said*) that contain unusual grapheme–phoneme correspondences. In due course, too, they will start recognising familiar ‘chunks’ in unfamiliar words and will be able to process these words chunk by chunk rather than phoneme by phoneme.

In the early stages, however, children will encounter many words that are visually unfamiliar, and in reading these words their attention should be focused on decoding rather than on the use of unreliable strategies such as looking at the illustrations, rereading the sentence, saying the first sound and guessing what might fit. Although these strategies might result in intelligent guesses, none of them is sufficiently reliable and they can hinder the acquisition and application of phonic knowledge and skills, prolonging the word recognition process and lessening children’s overall understanding. Children who routinely adopt alternative cues for reading unknown words, instead of learning to decode them, find themselves stranded when texts become more demanding and meanings less predictable. The best route for children to become fluent and independent readers lies in securing phonics as the prime approach to decoding unfamiliar words.

---

5 If children can recognise ‘igh’ and ‘ough’ as single units, as we want them to start doing from Phase Three onwards, there is no reason why they should not start recognising other chunks of three, four and more letters as single units once they have decoded them often enough.
Self-teaching in reading

Some children will start to self-teach quite early on, particularly for reading purposes – once they have understood how decoding works, they will work out more of the alphabetic code for themselves and will be able to read text going beyond the grapheme–phoneme correspondences they have been explicitly taught. Even these children, however, will benefit from hearing more complex texts read aloud by an adult. This fosters comprehension and an enjoyment of books – so much the better if they can see and follow the text as it is read.

Independent writing and ‘invented’ spelling

From an early stage, some children may start spontaneously producing spellings such as *frend* for friend and *hoam* for home, or even *chrain* for train or *nyoo* for new. Teachers should recognise worthy attempts made by children to spell words but should also correct them selectively and sensitively. If this is not done, invented spellings may become ingrained.

Teaching the programme: some frequently asked questions

What is systematic phonics teaching?

High quality systematic phonic work teaches children the correspondences between graphemes in written language and phonemes in spoken language, and how to use these correspondences to read and spell words. Phonics is systematic when all the major grapheme-phoneme correspondences are taught in a clearly defined sequence. Research shows that systematic phonics teaching yields superior performance in reading compared to all types of unsystematic or no phonics teaching.

What needs to be taught in each session once systematic phonic work begins?

Phonics comprises the knowledge of the alphabetic code and the skills of blending for reading and segmentation for spelling. Some sessions include learning a new grapheme; every session includes practice of grapheme recognition or recall. In the early stages all sessions include oral blending and segmentation. As soon as five or six graphemes are taught, sessions also include blending for reading and segmentation for spelling. In the later stages, reading and spelling are included in each session though the relative weighting of them may vary at different times.

Why are oral blending and segmentation important?

Oral blending and segmentation, which are the reverse of each other, help children to blend and segment for reading and spelling when they learn letters. Children enjoy games where they use their blending and segmenting skills to help a toy which can say and understand words only phoneme by phoneme. In these activities the term ‘sound-talk’ is used to describe the process of saying the phonemes in words.
Does it really matter how phonemes are pronounced?
Some children pick up the skill of blending very quickly even if the phonemes are not cleanly pronounced. However, many teachers have found that for other children pronouncing the phonemes in, for example, cat as 'cuh-a-tuh' can make learning to blend difficult. It is therefore sensible to articulate each phoneme as cleanly as possible.

What does ‘learning a letter’ comprise?
It comprises:
- distinguishing the shape of the letter from other letter shapes;
- recognising and articulating a sound (phoneme) associated with the letter shape;
- recalling the shape of the letter (or selecting it from a display) when given its sound;
- writing the shape of the letter with the correct movement, orientation and relationship to other letters;
- naming the letter;
- being able to recall and recognise the shape of a letter from its name.

How quickly can letters be taught?
Even by the age of five, children's personal experience of letters varies enormously. It ranges from a general awareness of letter shapes on labels, through recognising letters that occur in their names, to simple reading and writing. Some children may have made the important breakthrough – the realisation that the sounds they hear in words are represented with considerable consistency in the letters in written words. Whatever their experience, given good teaching, starting to learn all the letters for reading and writing is an exciting time.

Letters and Sounds is an incremental programme, progressing from the simple to the more complex aspects of phonics at a pace that befits children's rates of learning. Sets of letters are recommended, starting in Phase Two with ‘s’, ‘a’, ‘t’, ‘p’, ‘i’, ‘n’, for teaching in daily sessions of about 20 minutes, with the letters used as quickly as possible in reading and spelling words. To make the maximum use of any phonics programme it is best to teach the letters in the order the programme suggests.

What are mnemonics and are they necessary?
Some lowercase letters are easily confused. They consist of combinations of straight lines and curves and some are inversions of others (e.g. ‘b’, ‘p’, ‘d’, ‘q’). Mnemonics (memory aids) have proved very useful in helping young children remember letters. The best mnemonics are multi-sensory; they conjure up the shape and the sound of the letter. The letter 's' is an excellent example:
- It begins the word snake;
- It looks like a snake;
It represents a snake-like sound;

The hand, when writing it, makes a writhing, snake-like movement.

There are, however, some caveats to using mnemonics. Children love alphabetic mnemonics: the characters, the actions, the sounds. Teachers need to take care, however, that reinforcing learning of the alphabet through mnemonics and popular multi-sensory activities (e.g. drawing, painting and making models, becoming involved in stories) are understood by the children, not as an end but as the means for learning their letter shapes, sounds and functions in words, i.e. are focused on their phonic purpose.

**When should children learn to form letters as part of the phonics programme?**

In Phase One, children have been immersed in the ‘straight down’, ‘back up again’, ‘over the hill’ and anticlockwise movements that they eventually need when writing letters, using sand, paint, ribbons on sticks, etc. In addition, they will have had lots of fine motor experience with thumb and forefinger as well as using a pencil. So when most children start learning to recognise letters they will be able to attempt to write the letters. Learning handwriting – how letters join – involves a more demanding set of skills but if teaching is appropriate and the handwriting programme introduces some early joins these are helpful for learning the union of the two letters in a grapheme (e.g. ‘ai’, ‘ch’, ‘th’).

**When should letter names be introduced?**

The Early Learning Goals expect letter names to be known by the end of the Foundation Stage. In phonics, letter names are needed when children start to learn two-letter and three-letter graphemes (Phase Three) to provide the vocabulary to refer to the letters making up the grapheme. It is misleading to refer to the graphemes ‘ai’ and ‘th’ as /a/-/i/ and /t/-/h/.

Letter names can be successfully taught through an alphabet song. These are commercially available but the alphabet can fit many well-known tunes with a bit of tweaking to the rhythm. It is important that a tune is chosen that avoids bunching letters together so they cannot be clearly articulated.

**When and how should high-frequency words be taught?**

High-frequency words have often been regarded in the past as needing to be taught as ‘sight words’ – words which need to be recognised as visual wholes without much attention to the grapheme–phoneme correspondences in them, even when those correspondences are straightforward. Research has shown, however, that even when words are recognised apparently at sight, this recognition is most efficient when it is underpinned by grapheme–phoneme knowledge.
What counts as ‘decodable’ depends on the grapheme–phoneme correspondences that have been taught up to any given point. Letters and Sounds recognises this and aligns the introduction of high-frequency words as far as possible with this teaching. As shown in Appendix 1 of the Six-phase Teaching Programme, a quarter of the 100 words occurring most frequently in children’s books are decodable at Phase Two. Once children know letters and can blend VC and CVC words, by repeatedly sounding and blending words such as in, on, it and and, they begin to be able to read them without overt sounding and blending, thus starting to experience what it feels like to read some words automatically. About half of the 100 words are decodable by the end of Phase Four and the majority by the end of Phase Five.

Even the core of high frequency words which are not transparently decodable using known grapheme–phoneme correspondences usually contain at least one GPC that is familiar. Rather than approach these words as though they were unique entities, it is advisable to start from what is known and register the ‘tricky bit’ in the word. Even the word yacht, often considered one of the most irregular of English words, has two of the three phonemes represented with regular graphemes.

How can I ensure that children learn to apply their phonics to reading and writing?

The relevance of phonics to reading and spelling is implicit in these materials. As soon as children know a handful of letters they are shown how to read and spell words containing those letters. In Phase Two, once the children have learned set 3 letters it is possible to make up short captions to read with the children, such as ‘a cat on a sack’. Further, in the course of Phase Three, many words become available for labels and notices in the role-play area, captions and even short instructions and other sentences. It is important to demonstrate reading and writing in context every day to make sure that children apply their phonic knowledge when reading and writing in their role-play and other chosen activities. By the end of Phase Three, children should be able to write phonemic approximations of any words they wish to use.

When and how should I assess children’s progress?

Children’s progress should be tracked through a reliable assessment process that identifies learning difficulties at an early stage. Children’s letter knowledge and ability to segment and blend need to be assessed individually, as their progress may not be sufficiently well ascertained in the group activities. The teaching materials for each phase therefore include assessment statements, and the words and captions provided in the appendices also serve as assessment checks at the end of the phase. Appendix 4 to the Six-phase Teaching Programme provides assessment tasks on:

- grapheme–phoneme correspondences;
- oral blending;
- oral segmentation;
- non-word reading.

Every session in Phases Two to Five of the Letters and Sounds programme includes grapheme recognition or recall practice, and blending and segmentation practice. During these practice activities, there is also the opportunity for assessment. For instance, in grapheme recognition, a child can point to the letters for other children to identify while the adults can observe and assess the children. For reading and writing, different children can be called upon each day to read a word individually and when they are writing words either with magnetic letters or on whiteboards, assessment is straightforward.

**How do local accents affect the teaching of phonics?**

Many people from the north of England do not have the phoneme /u/ (as in southern pronunciations of *up, cup, butter*) in their accents; they have the same vowel sound in *put* and *but*, and for them both words rhyme with *foot*. This is just one example of how accents affect grapheme–phoneme correspondence. While practitioners will need to be sensitive to these and other such occurrences most find that these differences can be dealt with on a common sense basis.
Appendix 1

Working terminology

Phonics has a large technical vocabulary. This can appear to be more of an obstacle than a help if practitioners and teachers think they must know most of it in order to start teaching phonics. Thankfully this is not the case. Explained here is a small number of working terms to help teach Letters and Sounds.

Phonics

Phonics consists of knowledge of the skills of segmenting and blending, knowledge of the alphabetic code and an understanding of the principles underpinning the way the code is used in reading and spelling.

Phonemes

A phoneme is the smallest unit of sound in a word that can change its meaning (e.g. in /bed/ and /led/ the difference between the phonemes /b/ and /l/ signals the difference in meaning between the words bed, led).

It is generally accepted that most varieties of spoken English use about 44 phonemes.

In alphabetic writing systems (such as English) phonemes are represented by graphemes.

Graphemes

A grapheme is a symbol of a phoneme, that is, a letter or group of letters representing a sound.

There is always the same number of graphemes in a word as phonemes.

The alphabet contains only 26 letters but we use it to make all the graphemes that represent the phonemes of English.
These words each have three phonemes (separate sounds). Each of these phonemes is represented by a grapheme. A grapheme may consist of one, two, three or four letters.

**Grapheme–phoneme correspondences (GPCs) and phoneme–grapheme correspondences**

We convert graphemes to phonemes when we are reading aloud (decoding written words). We convert phonemes to graphemes when we are spelling (encoding words for writing). To do this, children need to learn which graphemes correspond to which phonemes and vice versa. In order to read an unfamiliar word, a child must recognise (‘sound out’) each grapheme, not each letter (e.g. sounding out ship as /sh/-/i/-/p/ not /s/- /h/ - /i/ - /p/), and then merge (blend) the phonemes together to make a word.

**Segmenting and blending**

Segmenting and blending are reversible key phonic skills. Segmenting consists of breaking words down into their constituent phonemes to spell. Blending consists of building words from their constituent phonemes to read. Both skills are important. The skill of blending (synthesising) phonemes, in order, all through the word to read it, tends to receive too little attention in the teaching of phonics; it is very important to make sure that children secure blending skills.

**Digraphs and trigraphs (and four-letter graphemes)**

A digraph is a two-letter grapheme where two letters represent one sound such as ‘ea’ in seat and ‘sh’ in ship. A trigraph is a three-letter grapheme where three letters represent one phoneme (e.g. ‘eau’ in bureau, and ‘igh’ in night). And by definition a four-letter grapheme uses four letters to represent one phoneme (e.g. ‘eigh’ representing the /ai/ phoneme in eight and in weight).
A split digraph has a letter that splits, i.e. comes between, the two letters in the digraph, as in *make* and *take*, where ‘k’ separates the digraph ‘ae’ which in both words represents the phoneme */ai*/. There are six split digraphs in English spelling: ‘a-e’, ‘e-e’, ‘i-e’, ‘o-e’, ‘u-e’, ‘y-e’, as in *make, scene, like, bone, cube, type*.

A very few words have more than one letter in the middle of a split digraph (e.g. *ache, blithe, cologne, scythe*).

**Abbreviations**

VC, CVC, and CCVC are the respective abbreviations for vowel-consonant, consonant-vowel-consonant, consonant-consonant-vowel-consonant, and are used to describe the order of graphemes in words (e.g. *am* (VC), *Sam* (CVC), *slam* (CCVC), or *each* (VC), *beach* (CVC), *bleach* (CCVC)).
Appendix 2

Tables 1 to 4

The representation of phonemes

Phonemes are represented by symbols (in most cases familiar graphemes) between slash-marks (e.g. /b/). A simple table showing the 44 phonemes generally recognised as those of British Received Pronunciation (RP) and one spelling for each has already been given on page 11. The correspondences given there are broadly suitable for use in Phases Two to Four and can be used equally in the grapheme-to-phoneme direction needed for reading and in the phoneme-to-grapheme direction needed for spelling. Tables 1 to 4 in this appendix present a fuller picture of grapheme–phoneme information as it may be needed in and beyond Phase Five, although some of these correspondences have already featured in the ‘high-frequency words’ taught in earlier phases (printed in italics in the tables).

The reason for the inclusion of /th/ as well as /th/, and /oo/ as well as /oo/, is that the familiar graphemes ‘th’ and ‘oo’ can each represent two phonemes: ‘th’ can represent both a ‘whispery’ (‘unvoiced’) sound as in thin, shown here as /th/, and a ‘buzzing’ (‘voiced’) sound as in then, shown here as /θ/; ‘oo’ can represent both the vowel sound in book, shown here as /oo/, and the vowel sound in boot, shown here as /ou/. These distinctions in sound need to be included for the sake of covering all 44 phonemes, but as far as teaching beginners to read is concerned, the distinctions are trivial. The phonemes /θ/ and /θ/ are close enough to each other in sound, as are /oo/ and /oo/, that if children say the wrong one in their first attempt at reading a word, switching to the right one is easy, particularly as their familiarity with the spoken forms of words provides guidance. The /θ/ and /θ/ phonemes cause no problems at all in spelling, as ‘th’ is the only possible spelling for both. The spelling of the /oo/ and /oo/ sounds is not quite so straightforward – each can be spelt in more than one way, as the tables show.

The organisation of tables 1 to 4

Grapheme–phoneme correspondence information is presented in the phoneme-to-grapheme direction first (tables 1 and 2). This is not the direction needed for reading, but it follows on from the table on page 11 and the smaller number of basic units makes tables 1 and 2 visually simpler than tables 3 and 4. The first choice of grapheme for most of the 44 phonemes is obvious – where alternatives are equally simple and common (for example ‘ai’ or ‘ay’), teachers should make their own choice or be guided by the programme they are using. There is no simple spelling for the /zh/ sound (as in vision), but it can be left until children are ready for the more complex words in which it occurs.

Tables 3 and 4 repeat substantially the same information, but in the grapheme-to-phoneme direction needed for reading. The term ‘phoneme’ is still used for convenience in the main headings, despite the fact that the sounds represented by the relevant
Letters and Sounds: Notes of Guidance

Graphemes in some of the sample words consist of more than one phoneme in some or all accents.

Many common words contain grapheme–phoneme correspondences which occur in few if any other words. The correspondences are therefore ‘common’ in one sense but ‘uncommon’ in another. The word *of* illustrates the point: *of* is a simple word beginners will encounter frequently, but it is the only such word in which the letter ‘f’ stands for the /v/ sound. In reading, beginners need to remember to pronounce *of* as /ov/ (not as *off*, which has a different sound and meaning from *of*) every time they encounter it, which will be frequently, while also remembering to pronounce ‘f’ as /f/ in all the many other words in which it occurs. In spelling, they need to remember that *of* is the only word in which they must write the letter ‘f’ for the /v/ sound.

While the unusual GPC in the word *of* is easy to identify, identifying the unusual GPC in other words may not be so straightforward. For example, some people would regard the ‘b’ in *lamb*, the ‘n’ in *autumn* and the ‘t’ in *listen* as ‘silent’, and others would regard them as forming part of the digraphs ‘mb’, ‘mn’ and ‘st’. Either way, the correspondences are unusual – for example, ‘st’ far more often represents two separate phonemes (as in *stop*, *start*, *stand*, *step*, *must*, *blist*) than a single phoneme (as in *listen*, *Christmas*, *fasten*). In these tables, it has been decided to treat ‘mb’, ‘mn’ and ‘st’ as graphemes in the words in question, though no criticism is implied of programmes which prefer the ‘silent letter’ option, as this is linguistically acceptable.

The tables are not exhaustive. What is presented here should nevertheless enable teachers to fit further grapheme–phoneme correspondences into the overall picture as they arise.

**Note:** Grapheme–phoneme correspondences are included in the following tables only if children are likely to encounter them in the first two or three years of school.

---

### Table 1: Phonemes to graphemes (consonants)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phoneme</th>
<th>Grapheme(s)</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
<th>High-frequency words containing rare or unique correspondences (graphemes are underlined)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>b, bb</td>
<td>bat, rabbit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>c, k, ck</td>
<td>cat, kit, duck</td>
<td>school, mosquito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>d, dd, -ed</td>
<td>dog, muddy, pulled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>f, ff, ph</td>
<td>fan, puff, photo</td>
<td>rough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/g/</td>
<td>g, gg</td>
<td>go, bigger</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>hen</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>j, g, dg</td>
<td>jet, giant, badge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>l, ll</td>
<td>leg, bell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>m, mm</td>
<td>map, hammer</td>
<td>lamb, autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>n, nn</td>
<td>net, funny</td>
<td>great, knock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>p, pp</td>
<td>pen, happy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>r, rr</td>
<td>rat, carrot</td>
<td>write, rhyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>s, ss, c</td>
<td>sun, miss, cell</td>
<td>scent, listen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>t, tt, -ed</td>
<td>tap, butter, jumped</td>
<td>Thomas, doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/v/</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>van</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>wig</td>
<td>penguin, one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/y/</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>onion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>z, zz s, se, ze</td>
<td>zip, buzz, is, please, breeze</td>
<td>scissors, xylophone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/sh/</td>
<td>sh, s, ss, t (before -ion and -ial)</td>
<td>shop, sure, mission, mention, partial</td>
<td>special, chef, ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ch/</td>
<td>ch, tch</td>
<td>chip, catch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/th/</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/th/</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>breathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ng/</td>
<td>ng, n (before k)</td>
<td>ring, pink</td>
<td>tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/zh/</td>
<td>s (before -ion and -ure)</td>
<td>vision, measure</td>
<td>usual, beige</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the last column words printed in italic are from the list of 100 words occurring most frequently in children’s books.
Table 2: Phonemes to graphemes (vowels)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phoneme</th>
<th>Grapheme(s)</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
<th>High-frequency words containing rare or unique correspondences (graphemes are underlined)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/a/</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ant</td>
<td>said, says, friend, leopard, any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>e, ea</td>
<td>egg, head</td>
<td>women, busy, build, pretty, engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td>i, y</td>
<td>in, gym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/o/</td>
<td>o, a</td>
<td>on, was</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u/</td>
<td>u, o, o-e</td>
<td>up, son, come</td>
<td>young, does, blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>ai, ay, a-e</td>
<td>rain, day, make</td>
<td>they, veil, weigh, straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ee/</td>
<td>ee, ea, e, ie</td>
<td>feet, sea, he, chief</td>
<td>these², people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/igh/</td>
<td>igh, ie, y, i-e, i</td>
<td>night, tie, my, like, find</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oa/</td>
<td>oa, ow, o, oe, o-e</td>
<td>boat, grow, toe, go, home</td>
<td>oh, though, folk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oo/</td>
<td>oo, ew, ue, u-e</td>
<td>boot, grew, blue, rule</td>
<td>to, soup, through, two, lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oo/</td>
<td>oo, u</td>
<td>look, put</td>
<td>could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ar/</td>
<td>ar, a</td>
<td>farm, father</td>
<td>calm, are, aunt, heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/or/</td>
<td>or, aw, au, ore, al</td>
<td>for, saw, Paul, more, talk</td>
<td>caught, thought, four, door, broad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ur/</td>
<td>ur, er, ir, or (after ‘w’)</td>
<td>hurt, her, girl, work</td>
<td>learn, journey, were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ow/</td>
<td>ow, ou</td>
<td>cow, out</td>
<td>drought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oi/</td>
<td>oi, oy</td>
<td>coin, boy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/air/</td>
<td>air, are, ear</td>
<td>fair, care, bear</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ear/</td>
<td>ear, eer, ere</td>
<td>dear, deer, here</td>
<td>pier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ure/³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sure, poor, tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/a/</td>
<td>many different graphemes</td>
<td>corner, pillar, motor, famous, favour, murmur, about, cotton, mountain, possible, happen, centre, thorough, picture, cupboard... and others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3: Graphemes to phonemes (consonants)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grapheme</th>
<th>Phoneme(s)</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
<th>Correspondences found in many different words</th>
<th>Correspondences found in some high-frequency words but not in many/any other words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b, bb</td>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>bat, rabbit</td>
<td>lamb, debt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>/k/, /s/</td>
<td>cat, cell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cc</td>
<td>/k/, /ks/</td>
<td>account, success</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>/ch/</td>
<td>chip</td>
<td>school, chef</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ck</td>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d, dd</td>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>dog, muddy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dg</td>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>badge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f, ff</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>fan, puff</td>
<td>of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>/g/, /i/</td>
<td>go, gem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gg</td>
<td>/g/, /i/</td>
<td>bigger, suggest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gh</td>
<td>/g/, /-/-</td>
<td>ghost, high</td>
<td>rough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gn</td>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>gnat, sign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gu</td>
<td>/g/</td>
<td>guard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>hen</td>
<td>honest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>jet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>kit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kn</td>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>knot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>leg</td>
<td>half</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>bell</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le</td>
<td>/l/ or /el/</td>
<td>paddle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m, mm</td>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>map, hammer</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mb</td>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>map, hammer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mh</td>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>map, hammer</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nn</td>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>funny</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>/ng/, /ng+g/, /n+j/</td>
<td>ring, finger, danger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p, pp</td>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>pen, happy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph</td>
<td>/f/</td>
<td>photo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu</td>
<td>/kw/</td>
<td>quiz</td>
<td>mosquito</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r, rr</td>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>rat, carrot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rh</td>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>rhyme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>/s/, /z/</td>
<td>sun, is</td>
<td>sure, measure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the last column words printed in italic are from the list of 100 words occurring most frequently in children's books.

### Table 4: Graphemes to phonemes (vowels)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grapheme</th>
<th>Phoneme(s)</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
<th>Correspondences found in many different words</th>
<th>Correspondences found in some high-frequency words but not in many/any other words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>/a/, /o/, /ar/</td>
<td>ant, was, father</td>
<td>water, any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-e</td>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>make</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>said</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>/air/</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al, all</td>
<td>/al/, /or/, /or/</td>
<td>Val, shall, always, all, talk</td>
<td>half</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
<td>/ar/</td>
<td>farm</td>
<td>war</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>/air/</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>/or/</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>aunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>augh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>caught, laugh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aw</td>
<td>/or/</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay</td>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>says</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>/e/, /ee/</td>
<td>egg, he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td>/ee/, /e/</td>
<td>bead, head</td>
<td>great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>/ear/</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>learn, heart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ed</td>
<td>/d/, /t/, /ed/</td>
<td>turned, jumped, landed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>/ee/</td>
<td>bee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-e</td>
<td>/ee/</td>
<td>these</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eer</td>
<td>/ear/</td>
<td>deer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei</td>
<td>/ee/</td>
<td>receive, veil, leisure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eigh</td>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>eight, height</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>/ur/</td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ere</td>
<td>/ear/</td>
<td>here, were, there</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eu</td>
<td>/yoo/</td>
<td>Euston</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ew</td>
<td>/yoo/, /oo/</td>
<td>few, flew, sew</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ey</td>
<td>/i/ (/ee/)</td>
<td>donkey, they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>/i/, /igh/</td>
<td>in, mind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie</td>
<td>/igh/, /ee/, /i/</td>
<td>tie, chief, babies, friend</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-e</td>
<td>/igh/, /i/, /ee/</td>
<td>like, engine, machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igh</td>
<td>/igh/</td>
<td>night</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir</td>
<td>/ur/</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>/o/, /oa/, /u/</td>
<td>on, go, won, do, wolf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa</td>
<td>/oa/</td>
<td>boat, broad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oe</td>
<td>/oa/</td>
<td>toe, shoe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-e</td>
<td>/oa/, /u/</td>
<td>home, come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi</td>
<td>/oi/</td>
<td>coin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo</td>
<td>/oo/, /oo/</td>
<td>boot, look, blood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>/or/, /ur/</td>
<td>for, work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou</td>
<td>/ow/, /oo/</td>
<td>out, you, could, young, shoulder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>/owal/, /or/</td>
<td>our, your, journey, tour (see table 2, footnote 3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow</td>
<td>/owl/, /oa/</td>
<td>cow, slow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oy</td>
<td>/oi/</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>/u/, /oo/</td>
<td>up, put</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ue</td>
<td>/oo/, /yoo/</td>
<td>clue, cue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u-e</td>
<td>/oo/, /yoo/</td>
<td>rude, cute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ui</td>
<td></td>
<td>build, fruit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur</td>
<td>/ur/</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uy</td>
<td></td>
<td>buy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the last column words printed in italic are from the list of 100 words occurring most frequently in children's books.

To avoid lengthening this table considerably, graphemes for the schwa are not included, but see table 2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase One</th>
<th>Phases Two to Six</th>
<th>Phase Two up to 6 weeks</th>
<th>Phase Three up to 12 weeks</th>
<th>Phase Four 4 to 6 weeks</th>
<th>Phase Five throughout Year 1</th>
<th>Phase Six throughout Year 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase One paves the way for the systematic teaching of phonic work to begin in Phase Two.</td>
<td>Knowledge of GPCs¹.</td>
<td>19 letters of the alphabet and one sound for each.</td>
<td>7 more letters of the alphabet. Graphemes to cover most of the phonemes not covered by single letters.</td>
<td>No new grapheme–phoneme correspondences.</td>
<td>More graphemes for the 40+ phonemes taught in Phases Two and Three; more ways of pronouncing graphemes introduced in Phases Two and Three.</td>
<td>Word-specific spellings – i.e. when phonemes can be spelt in more than one way, children learn which words take which spellings (e.g. see/sea, bed/head/said, cloud/clown).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase One activities are included to develop oral blending and segmenting of the sounds of spoken words. These activities are very largely adult-led. However, they must be embedded within a language-rich educational programme that takes full account of children’s freely chosen activities and ability to learn through play.</td>
<td>Skills of blending and segmenting with letters.</td>
<td>Starting with a small set of GPCs and then increasing the number; Blend separate sounds together into whole words (for reading) Segment whole words into separate sounds (for spelling) (e.g. in, up, cat, sit, run, and, hops, bell²). Optional: Simple words of two syllables using taught GPCs (e.g. sunset, laptop, picnic, robin, camel).</td>
<td>Blend and segment sounds represented by single letters and graphemes of more than one letter, including longer words (e.g. chip, moon, night; thunder — choice of words will depend on which GPCs have been taught). Blend to read simple captions, sentences and questions.</td>
<td>Blend and segment sounds with adjacent consonants (e.g. went, frog, stand, jumps, shrink).</td>
<td>Blend and segment sounds represented by all GPCs taught so far. Try alternative pronunciations for graphemes if the first attempt sounds wrong (e.g. cow read as /core/ sounds wrong; break read as /breck/ or /breck/ sounds wrong).</td>
<td>Increasingly fluent sounding and blending of words encountered in reading for the first time. Spelling of words with prefixes and suffixes, doubling and dropping letters where necessary (e.g. hop/hopping, hope/hoping, hope/hopeful, carry/carried, happy/happiness). Increasingly accurate spelling of words containing unusual GPCs (e.g. laugh, once, two, answer, could, there).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase One activities are designed to underpin and run alongside activities in other phases.</td>
<td>High-frequency words containing GPCs not yet taught.</td>
<td>the, to, no, go, I³</td>
<td>he, she, we, me, be, was, my, you, her, they, all, are.³</td>
<td>Emphasise parts of words containing known correspondences said, so, have, like, some, come, were, there, little, one, do, when, out, what.³ Again, emphasise parts of words containing known correspondences.</td>
<td>oh, their, people, Mr, Mrs, looked, called, asked, water, where, who, again, though, through, work, mouse, many, laughed, because, different, any, eyes, friends, once, please.³</td>
<td>As needed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ GPCs: Grapheme–phoneme correspondences
² See word banks for more examples (all phases)
³ See Appendix 1 in the Letters and Sounds Six-phase Teaching Programme
⁴ Note that the teaching of spelling cannot be completed in Year 2 – it needs to continue rigorously throughout primary school, and beyond if necessary.
Phase One

Notes for practitioners and teachers

Phase One falls largely within the Communication, Language and Literacy area of learning in the Early Years Foundation Stage. In particular, it will support linking sounds and letters in the order in which they occur in words, and naming and sounding the letters of the alphabet. It also draws on and promotes other areas of learning described in the Early Years Foundation Stage (EYFS), particularly Personal, Social and Emotional Development and Creative Development, where, for example, music plays a key part in developing children’s language. Phase One contributes to the provision for Communication, Language and Literacy; it does not constitute the whole language provision.

The activities in Phase One are mainly adult-led with the intention of teaching young children important basic elements of the Letters and Sounds programme such as oral segmenting and blending of familiar words. However, it is equally important to sustain and draw upon worthwhile, freely chosen activities that are provided for children in good early years settings and Reception classes. The aim is to embed the Phase One adult-led activities in a language-rich provision that serves the best interests of the children by fully recognising their propensity for play and its importance in their development.

It follows that the high quality play activities which typify good provision will offer lots of opportunities to enrich children’s language across the six areas of learning:

- Personal, Social and Emotional Development
- Communication, Language and Literacy
- Problem Solving, Reasoning and Numeracy
- Knowledge and Understanding of the World
- Physical Development
- Creative Development.

Practitioners and teachers will need to be alert to the opportunities afforded for language development through children’s play, and link learning from the Letters and Sounds programme with all six areas.
Enjoying and sharing books
Experience shows that children benefit hugely by exposure to books from an early age.

Right from the start, lots of opportunities should be provided for children to engage with books that fire their imagination and interest. They should be encouraged to choose and peruse books freely as well as sharing them when read by an adult.

Enjoying and sharing books leads to children seeing them as a source of pleasure and interest and motivates them to value reading.

Planning and progression
Practitioners and teachers should provide daily speaking and listening activities that are well matched to children’s developing abilities and interests, drawing upon observations and assessments to plan for progression and to identify children who need additional support, for example to discriminate and produce the sounds of speech.

A rich and varied environment will support children’s language learning through Phase One and beyond. Indoor and outdoor spaces should be well planned so that they can be used flexibly. For each aspect in Phase One, there are photographs and captions that illustrate the ways in which the learning environment can be designed to encourage children to explore and apply the knowledge and skills to which they have been introduced through the activities.

Oral blending and segmenting the sounds in words are an integral part of the later stages of Phase One. Whilst recognising alliteration (words that begin with the same sound) is important as children develop their ability to tune into speech sounds, the main objective should be segmenting words into their component sounds, and especially blending the component sounds all through a word.

Exploring the sounds in words should occur as opportunities arise throughout the course of the day’s activities, as well as in planned adult-led sessions with groups and individual children. Children’s curiosity in letter shapes and written words should be fostered throughout Phase One to help them make a smooth transition to Phase Two, when grapheme–phoneme correspondences are introduced. There is no requirement that children should have mastered all the skills in Phase One (e.g. the ability to supply a rhyming word) before beginning Phase Two.
Modelling listening and speaking

The ways in which practitioners and teachers model speaking and listening, interact and talk with children are critical to the success of Phase One activities and to promoting children’s speaking and listening skills more widely. The key adult behaviours can be summarised as follows.

- Listen to encourage talking – time spent listening to children talk to each other, and listening to individuals without too frequent interruption, helps them to use more, and more relevant, language. This provides practitioners with insights into children’s learning in order to plan further learning, that is make assessments for learning. Practitioners should recognise that waiting time is constructive. It allows children to think about what has been said, gather their thoughts and frame their replies.

- Model good listening. This includes making eye contact with speakers, asking the sort of questions attentive listeners ask and commenting on what has been said. Effective practitioners adapt their spoken interventions to give children ample opportunities to extend their spoken communication.

- Provide good models of spoken English to help young children enlarge their vocabulary and learn, for example, how to structure comprehensible sentences, speak confidently and clearly, and sustain dialogue. Phase One activities are designed to foster these attributes.

Look, listen and note: making assessments for learning

Effective assessment involves careful observation, analysis and review by practitioners of each child’s knowledge, skills and understanding in order to track their progress and make informed decisions about planning for the next steps of learning. This assessment for learning (Early Years Foundation Stage paras 2.6–2.10, Ref: 00012-2007PCK-EN) is key to the success of Phase One and for enabling practitioners to make principled, professional judgments about when children should begin a systematic phonics programme. For this reason, examples of what practitioners should focus their observations on are included after each set of the Phase One activities under the subheading ‘Look, listen and note’. These examples are designed to help practitioners keep a careful eye on children’s progress and will help to identify those who may need further practice and support before moving on, as well as supporting those who are capable of making rapid progress. By observing children, listening to them and noting their achievements, practitioners will be well placed to judge how well children are doing and plan next steps.

At the end of each aspect, the ‘Considerations’ section provides some indications of what practitioners need to reflect on to develop their practice and to ensure that the needs of all the children are met. For example, these sections suggest how activities may be extended where appropriate to provide greater challenge and encourage children to apply their developing language knowledge and skills more widely.
Seven aspects and three strands

Phase One activities are arranged under the following seven aspects.

- Aspect 1: General sound discrimination – environmental sounds
- Aspect 2: General sound discrimination – instrumental sounds
- Aspect 3: General sound discrimination – body percussion
- Aspect 4: Rhythm and rhyme
- Aspect 5: Alliteration
- Aspect 6: Voice sounds
- Aspect 7: Oral blending and segmenting

While there is considerable overlap between these aspects, the overarching aim is for children to experience regular, planned opportunities to listen carefully and talk extensively about what they hear, see and do. The boundaries between each strand are flexible and not fixed: practitioners should plan to integrate the activities according to the developing abilities and interests of the children in the setting.

Each aspect is divided into three strands.

- Tuning into sounds (auditory discrimination)
- Listening and remembering sounds (auditory memory and sequencing)
- Talking about sounds (developing vocabulary and language comprehension).

Activities within the seven aspects are designed to help children:

1. listen attentively;
2. enlarge their vocabulary;
3. speak confidently to adults and other children;
4. discriminate phonemes;
5. reproduce audibly the phonemes they hear, in order, all through the word;
6. use sound-talk to segment words into phonemes.

The ways in which practitioners and teachers interact and talk with children are critical to developing children’s speaking and listening. This needs to be kept in mind throughout all phase one activities.
List of activities

Aspect 1: General sound discrimination – environmental sounds

- Listening walks 9
- A listening moment 9
- Drum outdoors 9
- Teddy is lost in the jungle 10
- Sound lotto 1 10
- Sound stories 10
- Mrs Browning has a box 10
- Describe and find it 11
- Socks and shakers 11
- Favourite sounds 11
- Enlivening stories 12

Aspect 2: General sound discrimination – instrumental sounds

- New words to old songs 15
- Which instrument? 15
- Adjust the volume 15
- Grandmother’s footsteps 15
- Matching sound makers 16
- Matching sounds 16
- Story sounds 17
- Hidden instruments 17
- Musical show and tell 17
- Animal sounds 17

Aspect 3: General sound discrimination – body percussion

- Action songs 20
- Listen to the music 20
- Roly poly 20
• Follow the sound 21
• Noisy neighbour 1 21
• Noisy neighbour 2 22
• Words about sounds 22
• The Pied Piper 23

Aspect 4: Rhythm and rhyme

• Rhyming books 25
• Learning songs and rhymes 25
• Listen to the beat 25
• Our favourite rhymes 25
• Rhyming soup 26
• Rhyming bingo 26
• Playing with words 26
• Rhyming pairs 27
• Songs and rhymes 27
• Finish the rhyme 27
• Rhyming puppets 28
• Odd one out 28
• I know a word 28

Aspect 5: Alliteration

• I spy names 31
• Sounds around 31
• Making aliens 31
• Digging for treasure 32
• Bertha goes to the zoo 32
• Tony the train’s busy day 32
• Musical corners 33
Our sound box/bag 33
Mirror play 34
Silly soup 34

Aspect 6: Voice sounds
- Mouth movements 37
- Voice sounds 37
- Making trumpets 37
- Metal Mike 38
- Chain games 38
- Target sounds 38
- Whose voice? 38
- Sound lotto 2 39
- Give me a sound 39
- Sound story time 39
- Watch my sounds 39
- Animal noises 40
- Singing songs 40

Aspect 7: Oral blending and segmenting
- Toy talk 42
- Clapping sounds 42
- Which one? 43
- Cross the river 43
- I spy 43
- Segmenting 43
- Say the sounds 44

Key
This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 1: Environmental sounds

Join children in their play to extend their talk and enrich their vocabulary.

Encourage children to use language for thinking by asking open questions such as What does it feel like to be in the tunnel?

Making large movements with swirling ribbons helps to develop physical skills necessary for writing.

Explore with children the sounds different animals make, including imaginary ones such as dragons.

Children enjoy experimenting with the sounds different objects can make.

Using a more unusual role-play area inspires children to use language for a range of purposes.
Aspect 1: General sound discrimination – environmental sounds

Main purpose
- To develop children’s listening skills and awareness of sounds in the environment

Listening walks
This is a listening activity that can take place indoors or outdoors.

Remind the children about the things that good listeners do (e.g. keep quiet, have ears and eyes ready). Invite the children to show you how good they are at listening and talk about why listening carefully is important. Encourage the children to listen attentively to the sounds around them. Talk about the different sounds they can hear. The children could use ‘cupped ears’ or make big ears on headbands to wear as they go on the listening walk. After the children have enjoyed a listening walk indoors or outdoors, make a list of all the sounds they can remember. The list can be in words or pictures and prompted by replaying sounds recorded on the walk.

A listening moment
This is another activity that can take place indoors or outdoors.

Remind the children how to be good listeners and invite them to show how good they are at listening by remembering all the sounds they hear when they listen for a moment. It may be useful to use a sand timer to illustrate, for example, the passing of half a minute. Ask them what made each sound and encourage them to try to make the sound themselves.

Drum outdoors
Give each child a beater or make drumsticks, for example from short pieces of dowel. Encourage the children to explore the outdoor area and discover how different sounds are made by tapping or stroking, with their beaters, a wooden door, a wire fence, a metal slide, and a few items such as pipes and upturned pots you have ‘planted’.

The activity could be recorded and/or photographed.

Ask each child to demonstrate their favourite sound for the rest of the group. The whole group can join in and copy.

Ask each child to take up position ready to make their favourite sound. An adult or a child acts as conductor and raises a beater high in the air to signal the children to play loudly and lowers it to signal playing softly.
Teddy is lost in the jungle
One child (the rescuer) is taken aside while a teddy bear is hidden somewhere in the room. Tell the other children they are going to guide the rescuer to the teddy by singing louder as the rescuer gets closer to, or quietly as the rescuer moves further away from the teddy. Alternatively lead the children in singing a familiar song, rhyme or jingle, speeding up and slowing down to guide the rescuer.

Sound lotto
There are many commercially produced sound lotto games that involve children matching pictures to a taped sound. This can be an adult-led small group activity or can be provided within the setting as a freely chosen activity.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- recall sounds they have heard;
- discriminate between the sounds;
- describe the sounds they hear.

Listening and remembering sounds

Main purpose
- Further development of vocabulary and children’s identification and recollection of the difference between sounds

Sound stories
There are many commercially available resources with prerecorded sounds to illustrate a simple sequence of events (e.g. a thunderstorm). Each child selects two or three picture cards that match the sounds, places the cards in the same order in which the sounds are heard and explains the sequence of events.

Mrs Browning has a box
Turn a box on its side with the opening facing away from the children. One by one place between four and six familiar noisy items (e.g. a set of keys, crisp packet, squeaky toy) into the box, pausing to name them and demonstrate the sound each one makes.

Sing to the tune of ‘Old MacDonald’ but using your own name or one of the children’s:

*Mrs…has a box ee i ee i o*

*And in that box she has a…*

Stop. Gesture and ask the children to listen.
Handle one of the objects in the box, out of sight, to make a noise. The children take it in turns to guess what is making the sound. Continue the song but imitating the sound using your voice.

*With a zzz zzz here and a zzz zzz there…*

Allow the children to take a turn at making a noise from inside the box and use their names as you sing.

**Describe and find it**

Set up a model farmyard. Describe one of the animals but do not tell the children its name. Say, for example: *This animal has horns, four legs and a tail.* Ask them to say which animal it is. Ask them to make the noise the animal might make. When they are familiar with the game let individual children take the part of the adult and describe the animal for the others to name.

This activity can be repeated with other sets of objects such as zoo animals, toy sets based on transport (e.g. aeroplane, car, train, bus, boat) and musical instruments. It can be made more challenging by introducing sets of random objects to describe and name.

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- describe what they see;
- identify the animals and imitate the sounds;
- add new words to their vocabulary.

**Talking about sounds**

**Main purpose**

- To make up simple sentences and talk in greater detail about sounds

**Socks and shakers**

Partially fill either opaque plastic bottles or the toes of socks with noisy materials (e.g. rice, peas, pebbles, marbles, shells, coins). Ask the children to shake the bottles or socks and identify what is inside from the sound the items make. From the feel and the sound of the noisy materials encourage the children to talk about them. Ask questions such as: *Where might we find shells and pebbles?*

**Favourite sounds**

Make a poster or use a whiteboard for the children to record their favourite sounds pictorially. Invite them to put their sounds in order of popularity and talk about the ones they like the best. Ask the children to think about sounds that they do not like (e.g. stormy weather, barking dogs, car horns, crying babies) and to say why.
Enlivening stories
Involve the children in songs and stories, enlivened by role-play, props and repeated sounds, for example acting out:

*Humpty Dumpty sat on a wall,*

*Humpty Dumpty had a great fall* (bump, crash, bang!)

*All the King’s horses and all the King’s men* (gallop, gallop, gallop)

*Couldn’t put Humpty together again* (boo, hoo, boo, hoo, boo, hoo).

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- identify different sounds and place them in a context;
- identify similar sounds;
- make up sentences to talk about sounds;
- join in the activities and take turns to participate.

Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 1

- Use picture or symbol prompts to remind the children how to be a good listener. These could be displayed on the wall, on a soft toy or in a quiet listening den.

- As with all listening and attention activities, it is important to be aware that a busy environment can really hinder a child's ability to tune in. Keep a listening area free from overly distracting wall displays, posters and resources in order to support very young children or those who find it hard to focus on listening.

- A small group size is preferable, to allow all of the children to have sufficient time to participate in and respond to the activity.

- Using gestures such as a finger to the lips alongside ‘shhh’ and a hand to the ear alongside listen will give vital clues to children who have difficulty with understanding or those who find it difficult to listen to the spoken instruction alone.

- Scan the group before giving any sound cue. Use a child’s name if necessary then make the sound immediately that you have their attention.

- If parents or carers speak languages other than English, find out the word for ‘listen’ in the school community languages and use it when appropriate.
If the children seem to recognise an object, but can’t recall its name, help them by prompting with questions, such as: *What would you do with it? Where would you find it?*

As you lead the singing, take care to slow the song down. Slowing the pace can make a huge difference, helping children to understand the language used as well as giving them time to prepare and join in with the words or sounds.

Forget conventional sound effects. For example, dogs don’t always bark *woof*. Big dogs can sound like *WUW WUW WUW* and little ones give a squeaky *Rap rap*. Vary the voice to add interest. These sounds are often more fun and even easier for the child to attempt to copy. Be daring. Include some less conventional animals (e.g. a parrot, a wolf) and see what sounds you come up with. You might include dinosaurs – many children love them and no one knows what noises they made so children can be as inventive as they like.

Where parents or carers speak languages other than English, find out how they represent animal noises. Are *woof*, *meow* and *quack* universal? Which examples from other languages are the most like the real sounds?
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 2: Instrumental sounds

Children use home-made shakers to explore and learn how sounds can be changed.

Playing with musical instruments outdoors encourages children to experiment with the sounds they can hear.

Note which children can make up simple rhythms.

Observe how well the children listen to each other as they play in the band.

In their free play, children enjoy revisiting an adult-led activity.
Aspect 2: General sound discrimination – instrumental sounds

These activities promote speaking and listening through the use of musical instruments (either purchased or made by the children). They do not replace the rich music provision necessary for creative development in the wider educational programme.

Main purpose

- To experience and develop awareness of sounds made with instruments and noise makers

New words to old songs

Take a song or rhyme the children know well and invent new words to suit the purpose and the children’s interests. Use percussion instruments to accompany the new lyrics.

Which instrument?

This activity uses two identical sets of instruments. Give the children the opportunity to play one set to introduce the sounds each instrument makes and name them all. Then one child hides behind a screen and chooses one instrument from the identical set to play. The other children have to identify which instrument has been played.

Develop the activity by playing a simple rhythm or by adding a song to accompany the instrument (e.g. There is a music man. Clap your hands) while the hidden instrument is played. This time the listening children have to concentrate very carefully, discriminating between their own singing and the instrument being played.

Adjust the volume

Two children sit opposite each other with identical instruments. Ask them to copy each other making loud sounds and quiet sounds. It may be necessary to demonstrate with two adults copying each other first. Then try the activity with an adult with one child.

Use cards giving picture or symbol cues to represent loud or quiet (e.g. a megaphone, puppet of a lion; a finger on the lips, puppet of a mouse).¹

Grandmother’s footsteps

‘Grandmother’ has a range of instruments and the children decide what movement goes with which sound (e.g. shakers for running on tip-toe, triangle for fairy steps).

First an adult will need to model being Grandmother. Then a child takes the role.

¹ Activity based on Looking and Listening Pack ©Heywood Middleton & Rochdale Primary Care Trust. Used with kind permission.
Grandmother stands with her back to the others and plays an instrument. The other children move towards Grandmother in the manner of the instrument while it is playing. They stop when it stops. The first person to reach Grandmother takes over that role and the game starts again.

**Look, listen and note**
Look, listen and note how well children:
- identify and name the instruments being played;
- listen and respond as the instrument is being played.

**Listening and remembering sounds**

**Main purpose**
- To listen to and appreciate the difference between sounds made with instruments

**Matching sound makers**
Show pairs of sound makers (e.g. maracas, triangles) to a small group of children. Place one set of the sound makers in a feely bag.

The children take turns to select a sound maker from the feely bag. Once all the children have selected a sound maker, remind them to listen carefully. Play a matching sound maker. The child with that sound maker stands up and plays it.

This activity can be adapted by playing the sound maker behind a screen so that the children have to identify it by the sound alone.¹

**Matching sounds**
Invite a small group of children to sit in a circle. Provide a selection of percussion instruments. One child starts the game by playing an instrument. The instrument is then passed round the circle and each child must use it to make the same sound or pattern of sounds as the leader. Start with a single sound to pass round the circle, and then gradually increase the difficulty by having a more complex sequence of sounds or different rhythms.

**Look, listen and note**
Look, listen and note how well children:
- are able to remember and repeat a rhythm;
- discriminate and reproduce loud and quiet sounds;
- are able to start and stop playing at the signal.

¹ Activity based on Looking and Listening Pack ©Heywood Middleton & Rochdale Primary Care Trust. Used with kind permission.
Main purpose

To use a wide vocabulary to talk about the sounds instruments make.

Story sounds

As you read or tell stories, encourage the children to play their instruments in different ways (e.g. Make this instrument sound like giant’s footsteps, … a fairy fluttering, … a cat pouncing, … an elephant stamping). Invite them to make their own suggestions for different characters (e.g. How might Jack’s feet sound as he tiptoes by the sleeping giant? And what about when he runs fast to escape down the beanstalk?). As the children become familiar with the pattern of the story, each child could be responsible for a different sound.

Hidden instruments

Hide the instruments around the setting, indoors or outdoors, before the children arrive. Ask the children to look for the instruments. As each instrument is discovered the finder plays it and the rest of the group run to join the finder. Continue until all the instruments are found to make an orchestra.

Musical show and tell

Invite groups of children to perform short instrumental music for others. The others are asked to say what they liked about the music. (They will need a selection of instruments or sound makers and some rehearsal time.)

Animal sounds

Provide a variety of animal puppets or toys and a range of instruments. Encourage the children to play with the instruments and the animals. Discuss matching sounds to the animals. Give a choice of two instruments to represent a child’s chosen animal and ask the children to choose which sound is the better fit: Which one sounds most like the mouse? What do you think, David?

Look, listen and note

Look, listen and note how well children:

- choose appropriate words to describe sounds they hear (e.g. loud, fierce, rough, squeaky, smooth, bumpy, high, low, wobbly);
- match sounds to their sources;
- use sounds imaginatively to represent a story character;
- express an opinion about what they have heard.
Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 2

- If a child is reluctant to attempt to copy actions with an instrument, spend a little time building confidence and interest in copying games. Present the child with a set of instruments. Have an identical set to hand. Allow the child to explore and copy back what the child does. Copying children’s actions can build confidence and make them feel their contribution is valued. If the activity results in an enjoyable copying game, the adult can subtly attempt to switch roles by taking up a different instrument and making a new sound for the child to copy.

- It will take a little while for some children to make a link between an animal and a corresponding instrument sound. Where necessary to support this, allow plenty of time for the children to play with the animal puppets or toys and talk about the sounds the animals make.

- Provide a variety of animal puppets or toys and a range of instruments. Sit alongside the children to play the instruments and encourage discussion about choices of instruments appropriate for the sounds the animals make.

- Encourage discussion with the children about why they have chosen the instrument to represent their particular animal.

The activities in Aspect 2 also provide opportunities to explore with the children their experience of music at home. Ask parents or carers whether they have any instruments they can bring in, either to play for the children or for the children to look at.
Using the outdoor area as much as possible encourages children to explore different ways of making sounds with their bodies.

Observe how well the children march, stamp and splash to a beat.

Listen to the children as they re-enact familiar stories.

Talk with children as they paint and comment on the movements and shapes they are making.

Stress simple sound patterns to accompany children’s mark-making.
Aspect 3: General sound discrimination – body percussion

Main purpose
- To develop awareness of sounds and rhythms

Action songs
Singing songs and action rhymes is a vital part of Phase One activities and should be an everyday event. Children need to develop a wide repertoire of songs and rhymes. Be sure to include multi-sensory experiences such as action songs in which the children have to add claps, knee pats and foot stamps or move in a particular way. Add body percussion sounds to nursery rhymes, performing the sounds in time to the beat. Change the body sound with each musical phrase or sentence. Encourage the children to be attentive and to know when to add sounds, when to move, and when to be still.

Listen to the music
Introduce one musical instrument and allow each child in the small group to try playing it. Ask the children to perform an action when the instrument is played (e.g. clap, jump, wave). The children can take turns at being leader. Ask the child who is leading to produce different movements for others to copy. As the children become more confident, initiate simple repeated sequences of movement (e.g. clap, clap, jump). Suggest to the children that they could make up simple patterns of sounds for others to copy. Ask the children to think about how the music makes them feel and let them move to the music.¹

Roly poly
Rehearse the rhyme with the actions (rotating hand over hand as in the song ‘Wind the bobbin up’).

₁ Ro … ły … po … ły … ever … so … slowly
₂ Ro … ły … poly faster.

(Increase the speed of the action as you increase the speed of the rhyme.)

Now add in new verses, such as:

₁ Stamp … your … feet … ever … so … slowly
₂ Stamp … your feet faster.

Ask the children to suggest sounds and movements to be incorporated into the song.

₁ Say hello ever so quietly
₂ Say HELLO LOUDER!

¹ Activity based on Looking and Listening Pack ©Heywood Middleton & Rochdale Primary Care Trust. Used with kind permission.
Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- produce contrasts in rhythm, speed and loudness;
- join in with words and actions to familiar songs;
- articulate words clearly;
- keep in time with the beat;
- copy the sounds and actions;
- make up patterns of sounds.

Listening and remembering sounds

Main purpose
- To distinguish between sounds and to remember patterns of sound

Follow the sound
Invite a small group of children to sit in a circle. The adult begins by producing a body percussion sound which is then ‘passed’ to the child sitting next to them such as clap, clap, clap. The sound is to be passed around the circle until it returns to the adult. Ask: Do you think that the sound stayed the same all the way round? What changed? Did it get faster or slower? Make the activity more difficult by introducing a simple sequence of sounds for the children to pass on (e.g. clap, stamp, clap).

Noisy neighbour 1
This game needs two adults to lead it.

Tell a simple story about a noisy neighbour and invite the children to join in. Begin with: Early one morning, the children were all fast sleep – (ask the children to close their eyes and pretend to sleep) – when all of a sudden they heard a sound from the house next door.

At this point the second adult makes a sound from behind the screen. The story teller continues: Wake up children. What’s that noise?

The children take it in turns to identify the sound and then the whole group are encouraged to join in with: Noisy neighbour, please be quiet. We are trying to sleep.

Repeat the simple story line with another sound (e.g. snoring, brushing teeth, munching cornflakes, yawning, stamping feet, washing).

Encourage the children to add their own ideas to the story about the noisy neighbour.
**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- copy a body percussion sound or pattern of sounds;
- identify hidden sounds;
- suggest ideas and create new sounds for the story.

**Talking about sounds**

**Main purpose**

- To talk about sounds we make with our bodies and what the sounds mean

**Noisy neighbour 2**

(See ‘Noisy neighbour 1’ above.)

Ask the children to suggest a suitable ending to the story. Discuss noises they like, noises that make them excited and noises that make them feel cross or sad. Ask when it is a good time to be noisy, and when it is best to be quiet or speak softly (e.g. when we need to listen). List the suggestions.

*Ask Is this a time to be noisy or quiet?* as you present scenarios such as when children are:

- at the swimming pool;
- in the library;
- at a party;
- with someone who is asleep;
- in the park;
- at a friend’s house when the friend is poorly;
- playing hide and seek.

**Words about sounds**

It is important that adults engage with children in their freely chosen activities and introduce vocabulary that helps them to discriminate and contrast sounds, for example:

- slow, fast;
- quiet, loud;
- long, short;
type of sound (click, stamp, etc.);

- type of movement (rock, march, skip, etc.).

Start with simple opposites that are obviously different (e.g. loud, quiet).

Listen to what the children have to say about the sounds they hear and then build on and expand their contributions and ideas.

**The Pied Piper**

Tell the story of the Pied Piper of Hamelin. Use different instruments for the Piper to play, with children moving in different ways in response. The child at the front decides on the movement and the rest of the group move in the same way. They follow the leader around the indoor or outdoor space, marching, skipping and hopping – vary the pace and describe the action: Fast, faster, slow, slower.

Introduce and model new words by acting them out (e.g. briskly, rapidly, lazily, sluggishly, energetically) for the children to copy and explore by acting them out in different ways.

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- use language to make different endings to the story;
- use a wide vocabulary to talk about the sounds they hear;
- group sounds according to different criteria (e.g. loud, quiet, slow, fast).

---

**Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 3**

- Remind the children to look and listen to the adult and also to each other.
- It might be necessary to demonstrate the sounds to the children before each activity starts in order to ‘tune them in’ and to encourage them to describe the sounds they hear.
- Be aware that some children may have difficulty coordinating the movements or actions to accompany songs and games. Give children plenty of time and space to practise large-scale movements every day.
- Some children may find it difficult to monitor their own volume without adult support.
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 4: Rhythm and rhyme

Enjoying and sharing books leads to children seeing them as a source of pleasure and interest.

Children need to build a stock of rhymes through hearing them repeated over and over again.

For children learning English as an additional language (EAL), songs and rhymes help them to tune into the rhythm and sound of English.

Children enjoy listening to rhymes and inventing their own.

Remind children of rhymes they know when you join them in the role play area Miss Polly had a dolly ...!

Encourage children’s word play by inventing new rhymes with them such as Hickory, Dickory Dable, the mouse ran up the .....
Aspect 4: Rhythm and rhyme

Main purpose

To experience and appreciate rhythm and rhyme and to develop awareness of rhythm and rhyme in speech.

Rhyming books

Regularly include rhyming books as part of the daily book-sharing session. Read these books with plenty of intonation and expression so that the children tune into the rhythm of the language and the rhyming words. Encourage the children to join in with repetitive phrases such as Run, run, as fast as you can, You can’t catch me, I’m the Gingerbread Man. Wherever possible make the activity multi-sensory to intensify learning and enjoyment.

Learning songs and rhymes

Make sure that singing and rhyming activities are part of the daily routine in small-group time and that extracts are repeated incidentally as events occur (e.g. It’s raining, it’s pouring as the children get ready to go outdoors in wet weather). Play with rhyming words throughout the course of the day and have fun with them. Sing or chant nursery rhymes and encourage the children to move in an appropriate way (e.g. rock gently to the beat of ‘See Saw Marjorie Daw’, march to the beat of ‘Tom, Tom the Piper’s Son’ and ‘The Grand Old Duke of York’, skip to the beat of ‘Here We Go Round the Mulberry Bush’).

Listen to the beat

Use a variety of percussion instruments to play different rhythms. Remind the children to use their listening ears and to move in time to the beat – fast, slow, skipping, marching, etc. Keep the beat simple at first (e.g. suitable for marching) then move on to more complex rhythms for the children to skip or gallop to.

Our favourite rhymes

Support a group of children to compile a book of their favourite rhymes and songs. They could represent the rhymes in any way they choose. The book can be used to make choices about which rhyme to say during singing time, or used for making independent choices in the book corner. Children may choose to act as teacher selecting rhymes for others to perform, individually or as a group.

Have a bag of objects which represent rhymes (e.g. a toy spider to represent ‘Incy Wincy Spider’, a toy bus for ‘The Wheels on the Bus’) and invite the children to choose their favourite.
Rhyming soup
Ask a small group to sit in a circle so they can see a selection of rhyming objects (e.g. rat, hat, cat) placed on the floor. Use a bowl and spoon as props to act out the song. Invite the children, in turn, to choose an object to put into the soup and place it in the bowl. After each turn, stir the soup and sing the following song to recite the growing list of things that end up in the soup.

Sing the first part of the song to the tune of ‘Pop Goes the Weasel’:

I’m making lots of silly soup
I’m making soup that’s silly
I’m going to cook it in the fridge
To make it nice and chilly
In goes… a fox… a box… some socks…

Rhyming bingo
Give each child in a small group a set of three pictures of objects with rhyming names. (Such pictures are readily available commercially.) Hide in a bag a set of pictures or objects matching the pictures you have given to the children.

The children take turns to draw out of the bag one object or picture at a time. Invite the children to call out when they see an object or picture that rhymes with theirs and to collect it from the child who has drawn it from the bag.

After each rhyming set is completed chant together and list the rhyming names. As you name objects give emphasis to the rhyming pattern.

Playing with words
Gather together a set of familiar objects with names that have varying syllable patterns (e.g. pencil, umbrella, camera, xylophone). Show the objects to the children, name them and talk about what they are used for. Wait for the children to share some of their experiences of the objects; for instance, some of them will have used a camera. Then encourage them to think about how the name of the object sounds and feels as they say it. Think about the syllables and clap them out as you say each word. Then clap the syllables for a word without saying it and ask: What object could that be?

As children gain confidence try some long words like binoculars, telephone, dinosaur.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- understand the pattern of syllables in the words presented to them;
- sing or chant the rhyming string along with the adult;
- recognise that the words rhyme;
join in with simple or complex rhythms;

- copy the rhythm;

- keep to the beat.

**Listening and remembering sounds**

**Main purpose**

- To increase awareness of words that rhyme and to develop knowledge about rhyme

**Rhyming pairs**

In a pairs game, use pictures of objects with names that rhyme. The children take it in turns to turn two cards over and keep them if the pictures are a rhyming pair. If they are not a rhyming pair, the cards are turned face down again and the other person has a turn. Start with a small core set of words that can then be extended.

The children need to be familiar with the rhyming word families before they can use them in a game – spend time looking at the pictures and talking about the pairs.

**Songs and rhymes**

Include a selection of songs within the daily singing session which involve children in experimenting with their voices. Simple nursery rhymes, such as ‘Hickory, Dickory, Dock’ provide an opportunity for children to join in with wheeee as the mouse falls down. Use this to find related words that rhyme: *dock*, *clock*, *tick-tock*. Substitute alternative rhyming sounds to maintain children’s interest and enjoyment.

**Finish the rhyme**

Use books with predictable rhymes that children are familiar with and then stop as you come to the final word in the rhyme. Invite children to complete it. Use plenty of intonation and expression as the story or rhyme is recounted.

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- recognise rhyming words;

- listen and attend to the rhyming strings.
Talking about sounds

Main purpose

- To talk about words that rhyme and to produce rhyming words

Rhyming puppets

Make up silly rhyming names for a pair of puppets (e.g., Fizzy Wizzy Lizzy and Hob Tob Bob). Introduce the puppets to a small group and invite them to join in story telling, leaving gaps for the children to fill in rhyming words, for example:

Are you poorly Lizzy? Oh dear.
Fizzy Wizzy Lizzy is feeling sick and...dizzy.

Bob is very excited. Today he is going to be a builder.
Hob Tob Bob has got a new...job.

Odd one out

Put out three objects or pictures, two with names that rhyme and one with a name that does not. Ask the child to identify the ‘odd one out’: the name that does not rhyme. Start with a small set of words that can then be extended. The children need to be familiar with the rhyming word families before they can use them in a game – spend time looking at the pictures and talking about the pairs.

I know a word

Throughout the course of daily activities, encourage the children to think about and play with rhyming words. The adult begins with the prompt I know a word that rhymes with cat, you need to put one on your head and the word is...hat. This can be used for all sorts of situations and also with some children’s names: I know a girl who is holding a dolly, she is in the book corner and her name is...Molly. As children become familiar with rhyme, they will supply the missing word themselves.

Look, listen and note

Look, listen and note how well children:

- generate their own rhymes;
- complete sentences using appropriate rhyming words;
- make a series of words that rhyme.
Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 4

- It is important for children to experience a rich repertoire of poems, rhymes and songs. They need to build a stock of rhymes through hearing them repeated in different contexts. Parents and carers can play a valuable role in developing children’s repertoires of rhymes. Keep parents and carers informed of any new rhymes you are learning with the children so that the adults can join in when the children start to sing them at home.

- For children learning EAL, songs and rhymes are a particularly effective way to remember whole sentences and phrases by tuning into the rhythm that accompanies them. This in itself is good practice for developing the speech patterns of the language; it is also important to attach meaning and ensure that contexts are understood.

- Encouraging nonsense rhymes is a good way for children to begin to generate and produce rhyme. While a child is developing speech sounds the normal immaturities in their speech may mean their version of a word is different from that of the adults in the setting (e.g. the adult prompts with You shall have a fish on a little… and the child joins in with dit). The adult then repeats back the correct articulation, ‘dish’.

- When children experiment with nonsense rhymes they are not confined by their own learned versions of words and so can tune into and produce rhyming patterns.

- Keep the songs slow so you can emphasise the rhyming patterns.

- Collecting a set of objects or producing pictures of objects with rhyming names can be time-consuming but this resource is essential to build experience of rhyme into children’s play. A set of cards from a commercially available rhyming lotto set can prove to be a versatile resource for many different activities.

- Generating rhymes is a difficult skill to master. Accept all the children’s suggestions. Where the children do manage to fill in with the target rhyming word, congratulate them on having done so and draw attention to the rhyming pattern.

- Children learning EAL often internalise chunks of language and may not hear where one word starts and another ends. They may continue to use many of these chunks of language for some time before they begin to segment the speech stream in order to use the constituent words in new contexts.

- When children can supply a list of rhyming words and non-words, after being given a start, they can be considered to be well on the way to grasping rhyme (e.g. adult says cat, mat, sat... and the child continues fat, pat, mat, rat). However, children may well be at a later phase of this programme before they can do this. There is no need to delay starting Phase Two until children have mastered rhyming.
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 5: Alliteration

Play alongside children in a café and place an order: ‘Please may I have some juicy jelly’ or ‘sizzling sausages’ or ‘chunky chips’.

After children have enjoyed their singing games, make the resources freely available to them to explore for themselves and to act out ‘being the teacher’.

Make sure the book collection includes books with lots of alliterative rhymes and jingles.

Join children at the water tray and introduce alliterative tongue twisters such as She sells seashells.
Aspect 5: Alliteration

Main purpose

To develop understanding of alliteration

I spy names

With a small group of children sitting in a circle, start the game by saying I spy someone whose name begins with… and give the sound of the first letter, for example ‘s’ for Satish. Then ask: Who can it be? Satish stands up, everyone says his name and he carries on the game, saying I spy someone whose name begins with…, and so on. If any children call out the name before the child with that name, still let the child whose name it is take the next turn.

If the children find separating out the first sound too hard in the early stages, the adult can continue to be the caller until they get the hang of it.

Sounds around

Make sure that word play with initial sounds is commonplace. Include lots of simple tongue twisters to ensure that children enjoy experimenting with words that are alliterative. Use opportunities as they occur incidentally to make up tongue twisters by using children’s names, or objects that are of particular personal interest to them (e.g. David’s dangerous dinosaur, Millie’s marvellous, magic mittens).

Making aliens

Before the activity begins, think of some strange names for alien creatures. The alien names must be strings of non-words with the same initial sound, for example:

Ping pang poo pop,
Mig mog mully mo,
Fo fi fandle fee.

Write them down as a reminder.

Talk to the children about the names and help them to imagine what the strange creatures might look like. Provide creative or construction materials for the children to make their own alien.

Comment as the children go about shaping the aliens and use the aliens’ strange names. Invite the children to display their aliens along with the aliens’ names.

Make the pattern clearer by emphasising the initial sound of an alien’s name. Draw the children’s attention to the way you start each word with the shape of your lips, teeth and tongue.
Digging for treasure
Collect two sets of objects suitable for use in the sand tray. Each set of objects must have names beginning with the same initial sound. Choose initial sounds for each set that sound very different from one another. Bury the objects in preparation for the session. As the children uncover the treasure, group the objects by initial sound and each time another is added recite the content of that set: Wow! You’ve found a car. Now we have a cup, a cow, a candle and a car.

Bertha goes to the zoo
Set up a small toy zoo and join the children as they play with it. Use a toy bus and a bag of animal toys with names starting with the same sound (e.g. a lion, a lizard, a leopard, a llama and a lobster) to act out this story. Chant the following rhyme and allow each child in turn to draw an animal out of the bag and add an animal name to the list of animals spotted at the zoo.

Bertha the bus is going to the zoo,
Who does she see as she passes through?
... a pig, a panda, a parrot and a polar bear.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- identify initial sounds of words;
- reproduce the initial sounds clearly and recognisably;
- make up their own alliterative phrases.

Listening and remembering sounds

Main purpose

- To listen to sounds at the beginning of words and hear the differences between them

Tony the Train’s busy day
Use a toy train and selection of objects starting with the same sound. A small group of children sits in a circle or facing the front so they can see objects placed on the floor. Use the props to act out a story with the train.

It was going to be a busy day for Tony. He had lots to do before bedtime. So many packages to deliver and so many passengers to carry. He set out very early, leaving all the other engines at the station, and hurried off down the track, clackedy clack down the track, clackedy clack down the track...

But he hadn’t gone very far when...!!! He saw something up ahead lying on the tracks.
‘Oh no!’ yelled Tony. ‘I must s – t – o – p.’ And he did stop, just in time. To Tony’s surprise there on the track lay a big brown bear, fast asleep.
'I had better warn the others,' thought Tony and so he hurried back to the station, clackedy clack going back, clackedy clack going back. Tony arrived at the station quite out of puff. ‘Whatever is the matter?’ said the other engines. ‘Toot, toot, mind the...big, brown bear’ panted Thomas. ‘He’s fast asleep on the track.’ ‘Thank you,’ said the others, ‘We certainly will.’

Continue with the whole object set and encourage the children to join in with saying the growing list of objects. Remember to give emphasis to the initial sound.

The aim is to have the group chant along with you as you recite the growing list of objects that Tony finds lying on the track. Make up your own story using the props and ask: *What do you think happens next?*

**Musical corners**

Put a chair in each corner of the room, or outdoors. Collect four sets of objects, each set containing objects with names that start with the same sound. (Four different initial sounds are represented.) Keep back one object from each set and place the remaining sets on each of the four chairs.

At first, the children sit in a circle or facing you. Name each of the four sets of objects, giving emphasis to the initial sound.

Explain that now there will be music to move around or dance to and that when the music stops the children are to listen. You will show them an object and they should go to the corner where they think it belongs.

**Our sound box/bag**

Make collections of objects with names beginning with the same sound. Create a song, such as ‘What have we got in our sound box today?’ and then show the objects one at a time. Emphasise the initial sound (e.g. s-s-s-snake, s-s-s-sock, s-s-s-sausage)

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- can recall the list of objects beginning with the same sound;
- can offer their own sets of objects and ideas to end the story;
- discriminate between the sounds and match to the objects correctly.
Talking about sounds

Main purpose
- To explore how different sounds are articulated, and to extend understanding of alliteration

Name play
Call out a child’s name and make up a fun sentence starting with the name (e.g. Ben has a big, bouncy ball, Kulvinder keeps kippers in the kitchen, Tim has ten, tickly toes, Fiona found a fine, fat frog). Ask the children to think up similar sentences for their own names to share with others.

Mirror play
Provide a mirror for each child or one large enough for the group to gather in front of. Play at making faces and copying movements of the lips and tongue. Introduce sound making in the mirror and discuss the way lips move, for example, when sounding out ‘p’ and ‘b’, the way that tongues poke out for ‘th’, the way teeth and lips touch for ‘f’ and the way lips shape the sounds ‘sh’ and ‘m’.

Silly soup
Provide the children with a selection of items with names that begin with the same sound. Show them how you can make some ‘silly soup’ by putting ‘ingredients’ (e.g. a banana, bumble bee and bug) into a pan in the role-play area.

Allow the children to play and concoct their own recipes. Play alongside them without influencing their choices. Commentate and congratulate the children on their silly recipes. Recite each child’s list of chosen ingredients. Make the pattern clear by emphasising the initial sound. By observing mouth movements draw the children’s attention to the way we start each word and form sounds.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:
- can articulate speech sounds clearly;
- select an extended range of words that start with the same sound.
Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 5

- Singing rhymes and songs with alliterative lines such as ‘Sing a Song of Sixpence’ and playing with jingles such as ‘Can you count the candles on the cake?’ helps to tune children’s ears to the relationships between the sound structures of words. Ultimately children need to be able to isolate the initial phoneme from the rest of word (e.g. to be able to say that ‘nose’ begins with the sound ‘n’). Children need to have a wealth of experience of hearing words that begin with the same sound so it is important to keep practising familiar tongue twisters and also to be inventive with new ones to model alliterative possibilities to the children.

- Do not expect all the children to be able to produce a full range of initial sounds or be able to produce the initial clusters such as ‘sp’ for spoon. Just make sure that each child’s attention is gained before reciting the string of sounds so that they can experience the initial sound pattern as it is modelled for them.

- These activities may reveal speech difficulties that may require investigation by a specialist such as the local speech and language therapist.

- Not all children will be happy to participate in copying games. Some may feel self-conscious or be anxious about getting the game wrong. One way to encourage copying is to lead the way by copying what the children do in the mirror and encouraging them to copy one another before asking them to copy your sounds and movements.

- Take care to whisper when modelling quiet sounds. Do not add an ‘uh’ to the end of sounds:
  - ‘ssss’ not ‘suh’
  - ‘mmm’ not ‘muh’
  - ‘t’ not ‘tuh’
  - ‘sh’ not ‘shuh’.

- Some children may be aware of the letter shapes that represent some sounds. While grapheme–phoneme correspondences are not introduced until Phase Two, it is important to be observant of those children who can identify letter shapes and sounds and to encourage their curiosity and interest.

- Be prepared to accept suggestions from children learning EAL who have a well-developed vocabulary in their home language, but be aware that words in home languages will not always conveniently start with the same sound as the English translation. Children very soon distinguish between vocabulary in their home language and English.
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 6: Voice sounds

As children explore the texture of shaving foam, pasta shapes or foamy water, introduce words that may be new to them such as smooth frothy crunchy.

As you watch children on the climbing frame, encourage them to vocalise ‘Weeee!’.

Encourage children to replicate water noises with sounds such as drip, bubble bubble, swoosh.

When children act out familiar stories, encourage them to use sound effects like swish swish through the grass, squelch squelch in the mud, splishy sploshy through the rain.
Aspect 6: Voice sounds

Main purpose
- To distinguish between the differences in vocal sounds, including oral blending and segmenting

Mouth movements
Explore different mouth movements with children – blowing, sucking, tongue stretching and wiggling. Practising these movements regularly to music can be fun and helps children with their articulation.

Voice sounds
Show children how they can make sounds with their voices, for example:
- Make your voice go down a slide – wheee!
- Make your voice bounce like a ball – boing, boing
- Sound really disappointed – oh
- Hiss like a snake – ssssss
- Keep everyone quiet – shshshsh
- Gently moo like a cow – mmmoooo
- Look astonished – ooooo!
- Be a steam train – chchchchch
- Buzz like a bumble bee – zzzzzzz
- Be a clock – tick tock.

This can be extended by joining single speech sounds into pairs (e.g. ee-aw like a donkey).

Making trumpets
Make amplifiers (trumpet shapes) from simple cones of paper or lightweight card and experiment by making different noises through the cones. Model sounds for the children: the up and down wail of a siren, the honk of a fog horn, a peep, peep, peep of a bird. Contrast loud and soft sounds. Invite the children to share their favourite sound for the rest of the group to copy. Use the trumpets to sound out phonemes that begin each child’s name.
Metal Mike
Encourage a small group of children to sit in a circle or facing the front so they can see you and Metal Mike (a toy robot computer). Have ready a bag of pictures of objects (e.g. cat, dog, mug, sock) and sound out and blend the phonemes in their names. Ask each child in turn to take out a picture or an object from a bag. Hold it up and tell the group that Metal Mike is a computer and so he talks with a robot voice. Ask the children to name the object as Metal Mike would and demonstrate it for them in a robotic voice (e.g. ‘c-a-t’). Feed the object or picture into Metal Mike and encourage the group first to listen to you and then join in as you say the word exaggerating the sound of each phoneme, followed by blending the phonemes to make the word.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:
- distinguish between the differences in vocal sounds.

Listening and remembering sounds

Main purpose
- To explore speech sounds

Chain games
Working with a small group of children, an adult makes a long sound with their voice, varying the pitch (e.g. eeeeeee). The next person repeats the sound and continues as the next joins in, to form a chain. The sound gets passed as far round the circle as possible. Start again when the chain is broken.

Target sounds
Give each child a target sound to put into a story when they hear a particular word or character (e.g. make a ‘ch’ sound when they hear the word ‘train’).

Start with a single sound that the small group of children can make together when they hear a target word. Be prepared to prompt initially and leave pauses in your reading to make it obvious where the sounds are required.

Whose voice?
Record some children talking while they are busy with a freely chosen activity and play the recording to a larger group. Can the children identify each other’s voices? Create a ‘talking book’ for the group or class with photographs of each child and help them to record their own voice message – My name is…., I like singing, etc.
Sound lotto 2
Record the children using their voices to make suitable sounds for simple pictures (e.g. of animals, a steam train, a doorbell, a clock). Ask them to listen to the recording later and match each sound to a picture.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:
- sustain their listening throughout a story;
- listen for a target word or character and respond with an appropriate associated speech sound;
- remember the sound sequence and produce it when required;
- recognise their own and each other’s voices, including a recorded voice.

Talking about sounds

Main purpose
- To talk about the different sounds that we can make with our voices

Give me a sound
After making a sound with your voice, talk about the ‘features’ of the sound with the children – was it a long sound, a loud sound, did it change from high to low, etc.? Introduce vocabulary gradually with examples and visual cues (e.g. symbols and pictures) to help the children who have difficulty understanding. Then introduce new vocabulary to the children to help them describe the sound (e.g. to talk about high and low pitch).

Sound story time
Discuss with the children how they can use their voices to add sounds to stories such as Bear Hunt, Chicken Licken or The Three Billy Goats Gruff.

Repeat favourite rhymes and poems in different voices together (e.g. whispering, growling, shouting, squeaking) and discuss the differences.

Watch my sounds
Provide small mirrors for the children to observe their faces, lips, teeth and tongue as they make different speech sounds and experiment with their voices.

Provide home-made megaphones in the outside area so the children can experiment with different speech sounds and their volume.
Animal noises
Provide simple animal masks, and tails if possible, to encourage the children to dramatise animal movements and sounds.

Singing songs
Provide a wide selection of rhymes and songs on CD or tape so that the children can choose to listen to and join in with their favourites, and can extend their repertoire.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:

- use appropriate vocabulary to talk about different voice and speech sounds.

Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 6

- Changes in voice and exaggerated facial expressions help to support listening and attention by building interest and anticipation. For some children, these clues are also vital to supporting their understanding of the story.

- Tuning in to what the child is doing and joining in with them tells the child you are listening to them.

- Children in the early stages of learning EAL may need time to observe others and rehearse the spoken challenge; as in any turn-taking activities they should not be asked to take the first turn.

- For extension, linguistic diversity and fun, where parents and carers speak languages other than English, find out how they represent, for example, animal noises. Are woof, meow and quack universal? Which examples from other languages are the most like the real sounds?
Letters and Sounds: Phase One

Aspect 7: Oral blending and segmenting

Encourage the children to vocalise as they play on the hoppers ‘h’ ‘h’ ‘h’ ‘h’

When children choose to play with the sound talk toys, listen out to how well they are trying to segment words into phonemes.

As children play with the balls, bounce a ball alongside them making the sound ‘b’ ‘b’ ‘b’

When children are in the writing area, note whether they are beginning to say their messages aloud as they write, as they have seen adults do.
Aspect 7: Oral blending and segmenting

Main purpose
- To develop oral blending and segmenting of sounds in words

Oral blending
It is important that the children have plenty of experience of listening to adults modelling oral blending before they are introduced to grapheme–phoneme correspondences. For example, when giving children instructions or asking questions the adult can segment the last word into separate phonemes and then immediately blend the sounds together to say the word (e.g. *It’s time to get your c-oa-t, coat!* or *Touch your t-oe-s, toes!* *Who can touch their f-ee-t, feet?*) Use only single-syllable words for oral blending.

Oral blending can also be modelled from time to time when books are being shared, particularly rhyming books where the last word in a rhyming couplet could be segmented into separate sounds and then blended by the adult.

Toy talk
Introduce to the children a soft toy that can only speak in ‘sound-talk’. The children see the toy whispering in the adult’s ear. To add to the activity, as the toy whispers the adult repeats the sounds, looks puzzled and then says the word straight afterwards. For example: *What would Charlie like for tea today?* The toy speaks silently in the adult’s ear and the adult repeats ‘ch-ee-se’ looking puzzled and then, says with relief ‘cheese!’ Now invite the children to see if they can speak like the toy: *Do you think you could try to toy talk? Say ch-ee-se:* (the children repeat ‘ch-ee-se’). Ask the toy again *What else would you like?* Be careful to think of items with names of only single syllables (e.g. fish, cake, pie, soup).

Use different scenarios: *What does the toy like to do in the playground?* (hop, skip, jump, run, etc.). As the children become more confident, make some errors – blend ‘skim’ for ‘skip’, for example, and ask them to catch you out by giving the correct blend.

Encourage the children to ask the toy questions with yes/no answers (e.g. *Can you sing?* Y-e-s/N-o). Or ask the toy the colour of his bike, his bedroom walls, his jumper, etc. and the toy will answer r-e-d, b-l-ue, g-r-ee-n, m-au-ve.

Clapping sounds
Think of words using the letters ‘s, a, t, p, i, n’ (e.g. *sat, pin, nip, pat, tap, pit, pip*) and sound them out, clapping each phoneme with the children in unison, then blend the phonemes to make the whole word orally.

As children’s confidence develops, ask individuals to demonstrate this activity to others.
Which one?
Lay out a selection of familiar objects with names that contain three phonemes (e.g. leaf, sheep, soap, fish, sock, bus). Check that all the children can recognise each object. Bring out the sound-talking toy and ask the children to listen carefully while it says the names of one of the objects in sound-talk so they can help it to put the sounds together and say the word. The toy then sound-talks the word, leaving a short gap between each sound. Encourage the children to say the word and identify the object. All the children can then repeat the sounds and blend them together – it is important that they do this and don’t simply listen to the adult doing so.

Cross the river
Choose a selection of objects with two or three phonemes as above. There can be more than one of the same object. Make a river across the floor or ground outside with chalk or ropes. Give each child or pair of children an object and check that all the children know the names of the objects. The toy calls out the name of an object in sound-talk (e.g. p-e-g). The children who have that object blend the sounds to make the word and cross the river.

I spy
Place on the floor or on a table a selection of objects with names containing two or three phonemes (e.g. zip, hat, comb, cup, chain, boat, tap, ball). Check that all the children know the names of the objects. The toy says I spy with my little eye a z-i-p. Then invite a child to say the name of the object and hold it up. All the children can then say the individual phonemes and blend them together ‘z-i-p, zip’. When the children have become familiar with this game use objects with names that start with the same initial phoneme (e.g. cat, cap, cup, cot, comb, kite). This will really encourage the children to listen and then blend right through the word, rather than relying on the initial sound.

Look, listen and note
Look, listen and note how well children:
- blend phonemes and recognise the whole word;
- say the word and identify the object;
- blend words that begin with the same initial phoneme.

Listening and remembering sounds

Main purpose
- To listen to phonemes within words and to remember them in the order in which they occur

Segmenting
Invite a small group of children to come and talk to the toy in sound-talk, for example just before dinner time: Let’s tell the toy what we eat our dinner with. Discuss with the children and agree that we use a knife and fork. Then tell the toy in sound-talk which the children repeat. Continue with: Let’s tell the toy what we drink out of. Confer and agree on ‘cup’. Repeat in sound-talk for the toy to listen and then invite the children to do the same.
Ask the children to think of other scenarios which they could tell the toy or let them give him instructions. Then model the sound-talk for the children to repeat. This is teaching the children to segment words into their separate sounds or phonemes and is the reverse of blending. The children will soon begin to start the segmenting themselves.

Leave the sound-talk toy freely available to the children for them to practise and experiment with sound-talk. On special occasions, weekends or holidays, the toy may go on adventures or go to stay at the children’s homes. When he returns he will have lots to tell the children about his escapades – in sound-talk.

**Say the sounds**

When the children are used to hearing the toy say words in sound-talk and blending the individual sounds to make words, you may be able to ask some children to see whether they can speak in sound-talk. Choose some objects with three-phoneme names that you are sure the children know and hide them in a box or bag. Allow one of the children to see an object, and then ask them to try to say the separate sounds in the name of the object, just like the toy does (e.g. **d-u-ck**). The other children then blend the sounds together to make the word. The child can then reveal the object to show whether the other children are right.

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- segment words into phonemes.

**Talking about sounds**

**Main purpose**

- To talk about the different phonemes that make up words

When children are used to oral blending, and can readily blend two and three phonemes to make words, introduce the idea of counting how many phonemes they can hear. For example: **p-i-g**, pig. If we say the phonemes in that word one by one, how many phonemes can we hear? Let’s use our fingers to help us: p-i-g, one, two, three phonemes.

**Look, listen and note**

Look, listen and note how well children:

- identify the number of phonemes that make up a given word.
Considerations for practitioners working with Aspect 7

- During Phase One, there is no expectation that children are introduced to letters (graphemes). Of course some children may bring knowledge of letters from home, and be interested in letters they see around them on signs, displays and in books. Practitioners and teachers should certainly respond to children’s comments and queries about letters and words in print.

- Children who can hear phonemes in words and sound them out accurately are generally well placed to make a good start in reading and writing.

- Children learning EAL generally learn to hear sounds in words very easily.

- Children need to hear the sounds in the word spoken in sound-talk immediately followed by the whole word. Avoid being tempted to ask any questions in between such as *I wonder what that word can be?* or *Do you know what that word is?* The purpose is to model oral blending and immediately give the whole word.

- It is important only to segment and blend the last word in a sentence or phrase and not words that occur at the beginning or middle of the sentence. Over time and with lots of repetition, the children will get to know the routine and as they gain confidence they will provide the blended word before the adult.

- Using a toy is preferable to a puppet because it is important that children watch the adult’s face and mouth to see the sounds being articulated clearly, rather than focusing on the imitated movements of the puppet.

- It is very important to enunciate the phonemes very clearly and not to add an ‘uh’ to some (e.g. ‘ssssssss’ and not ‘suh’, ‘mmmmmmmm’ and not ‘muh’). Examples of correct enunciation can be found on the accompanying DVD.

- Avoid using words with adjacent consonants (e.g. ‘sp’ as in ‘spoon’) as these will probably be too difficult for children at the early stages of practising blending and segmenting.

- Once children have been introduced to blending and segmenting they should be practised hand in hand as they are reversible processes.
Letters and Sounds: Phase Two
## Phase Two

*(up to 6 weeks)*

### Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested daily teaching in Phase Two</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested timetable for Phase Two – discrete teaching</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching sets 1–5 letters</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising letter recognition (for reading) and recall (for spelling)</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising oral blending and segmentation</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and practising blending for reading VC and CVC words</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and practising segmenting VC and CVC words for spelling</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing two-syllable words for reading</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching reading and writing captions</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank of suggested words for practising reading and spelling</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank of suggested captions for practising reading</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Key

This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Summary

Children entering Phase Two will have experienced a wealth of listening activities, including songs, stories and rhymes. They will be able to distinguish between speech sounds and many will be able to blend and segment words orally. Some will also be able to recognise spoken words that rhyme and will be able to provide a string of rhyming words, but inability to do this does not prevent moving on to Phase Two as these speaking and listening activities continue. (See Appendix 3: Assessment).

The purpose of this phase is to teach at least 19 letters, and move children on from oral blending and segmentation to blending and segmenting with letters. By the end of the phase many children should be able to read some VC and CVC words and to spell them either using magnetic letters or by writing the letters on paper or on whiteboards. During the phase they will be introduced to reading two-syllable words and simple captions. They will also learn to read some high-frequency ‘tricky’ words: the, to, go, no.

The teaching materials in this phase suggest an order for teaching letters and provide a selection of suitable words made up of the letters as they are learned. These words are for using in the activities – practising blending for reading and segmenting for spelling. This is not a list to be worked through slavishly, but to be selected from as needed for an activity.

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to word recognition. Automatic reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal.

Letter progression (one set per week)

Set 1:  
Set 2:  
Set 3:  
Set 4:  
Set 5:  

Magnetic boards and letters

Magnetic boards and letters are very effective in helping children to identify letter shapes and develop the skills of blending and segmenting. For example, teaching sequences can be demonstrated to an entire teaching group or class on a large magnetic board followed by children working in pairs with a small magnetic board to secure the learning objective. Working in pairs in this way significantly increases opportunities for children to discuss the task in hand and enlarge their understanding. Once children are adept at manipulating magnetic boards and letters they can use them to extend many activities suggested in Phase Two and beyond.
Suggested daily teaching in Phase Two

Sequence of teaching in a discrete phonics session

- Introduction
  - Objectives and criteria for success
- Revisit and review
- Teach
- Practise
- Apply
- Assess learning against criteria

Revisit and review
- Practise previously learned letters
- Practise oral blending and segmentation

Teach
- Teach a new letter
- Teach blending and/or segmentation with letters (weeks 2 and 3)
- Teach one or two tricky words (week 3 onwards)

Practise
- Practise reading and/or spelling words with the new letter

Apply
- Read or write a caption (with the teacher) using one or more high-frequency words and words containing the new letter (week 3 onwards)
## Suggested timetable for Phase Two – discrete teaching

### Week 1
- Teach set 1 letters
- Practise the letter(s) and sound(s) learned so far
- Briefly practise oral blending and segmentation

### Week 2
- Teach set 2 letters
- Practise all previously learned letters and sounds
- Briefly practise oral blending and segmentation
- Teach blending with letters (blending for reading)
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise blending and reading the high-frequency words *is, it, in, at*

### Week 3
- Teach set 3 letters
- Practise previously learned letters and sounds
- Briefly practise oral blending and segmentation
- Practise blending with letters (reading words)
- Teach segmentation for spelling
- Teach blending and reading the high-frequency word *and*
- Demonstrate reading captions using words with sets 1 and 2 letters and *and*

### Week 4
- Teach *ck*, explain its use at the end of words and practise reading words ending in *ck*
- Teach the three other set 4 letters
- Practise previously learned letters and sounds
- Briefly practise oral blending and segmentation
- Practise blending to read words
- Practise segmentation to spell words
- Teach reading the tricky words *to* and *the*
- Support children in reading captions using sets 1–4 letters and *the, to* and *and*
- Demonstrate spelling captions using sets 1–4 letters and *and*

### Week 5
- Teach set 5 letters and sounds
- Explain *ff, ll* and *ss* at the end of words
- Practise previously learned letters and sounds
- Practise blending to read words
- Practise segmentation to spell words
- Teach reading tricky words *no, go, I*
- Support children in reading captions using sets 1–5 letters and *no, go, I, the, to*
- Demonstrate spelling captions using sets 1–5 letters and *and, to* and *the*

### Week 6
- Revise all the letters and sounds taught so far
- Continue to support children in reading words and captions
Three-part example session for teaching the letter s

Purpose

To learn to say a discrete phoneme, recognise and write the letter that represents that phoneme

Resources

- Fabric snake
- Card showing, on one side, a picture of a snake (mnemonic) in the shape of the letter s with the letter s superimposed in black on the snake; on the other side, the letter s
- Small whiteboards, pens and wipes or paper and pencils

Procedure

Hear it and say it

1. Display the picture of a snake.
2. Make a hissing noise as you produce a snake from behind your back; show the children the ssssssnake and make the snake into an s shape.
3. Weave your hand like a snake making an s shape, encouraging the children to do the same.
4. If any children in the room have names with the s sound in them, say their names, accentuating the sssss (e.g. Ssssarad, Chriissssss, Sssssandip).
5. Do the same with other words (e.g. sssssand, busssss) accepting suggestions from the children if they offer, but not asking for them.

See it and say it

1. On the card with the picture of the snake, move your finger down the snake from its mouth, saying sssss and saying ssssnake when you reach its tail.
2. Repeat a number of times, encouraging the children to join in.
3. Write s next to the snake and say sssssssssss.
4. Ask the children to repeat sssssssssss.
5. Point to the snake and say *sssssnake* and to the *s* and say *ssssssssssss*.

6. Repeat with the children joining in.

7. Put the card behind your back and explain that when you show the snake side of the card, the children should say *snake* and when you show the *s* side of the card, they should say *s*.

**Say it and write it**

1. Move your finger slowly down the snake from its mouth, this time saying the letter formation patter: *Round the snake’s head, slide down his back and round his tail*.

2. Repeat a couple of times.

3. Repeat a couple more times with the children joining in the patter as they watch you.

4. Ask the children to put their ‘writing finger’ or ‘pencil’ in the air and follow you in making an *s* shape, also saying the patter. Repeat a couple of times.

5. Ask them to do the same again, either tracing *s* in front of them on the carpet or sitting in a line and tracing *s* on the back of the child in front.

6. Finally, the children write *s* on whiteboards or paper at tables.

---

**Practising letter recognition (for reading) and recall (for spelling)**

As soon as the first three letters (*s, a, t*) are learned, play games to give the children lots of practice in recognising and recalling the letters quickly. Fast recognition of letters is very important for reading, and recall for spelling. A toy could ‘help’ you by doing the pointing (recognition) or saying the sounds of the letters (recall).

---

**Recognition (for reading)**

**Flashcards**

**Purpose**

- To say as quickly as possible the correct sound when a letter is displayed
**Resources**
- Set of A4 size cards with a letter on one side and its mnemonic on the other (e.g. the letter s on one side and a picture of a snake shaped like an s on the other)

**Procedure**
1. Hold up the letter cards the children have learned, one at a time.
2. Ask the children, in chorus, to say the letter sound (with the action if used).
3. If the children do not respond, turn the card over to show the mnemonic.
4. Sometimes you could ask the children to say the letter-sounds in a particular way (e.g. happy, sad, bossy or timid – mood sounds).
5. As the children become familiar with the letters, increase the speed of presentation so that the children learn to respond quickly.

**Interactive whiteboard variation**

**Resources**
- Interactive whiteboard with large letters stacked up one behind the other

**Procedure**
1. Reveal letters one by one by ‘pulling’ them across with your finger, gradually speeding up.

**Frieze**

**Resources**
- Frieze of letters
- Pointing stick/hand

**Procedure**
1. Ask the children to tell you the sounds of the letters as you point to the letters at random.
2. As the children become familiar with the letters, increase the speed of presentation so that the children learn to respond quickly.
3. Sometimes ask a child to ‘be teacher’ as this gives children confidence and gives you the opportunity to watch and assess them as they respond.
Interactive whiteboard variation

Resources
- Interactive whiteboard

Procedure
1. Display the letters the children have learned.
2. Either point to one letter at a time or remotely colour one letter at a time and ask the children to tell you each letter-sound.

Recall (for spelling)

Fans

Purpose
- To find the correct letter in response to a letter-sound being spoken

Resources
- Fans with letters from sets 1 and 2 (e.g. s, a, t, p, i, n), one per child or pair of children

Procedure
1. Say a letter-sound and ask the children to find the letter on the fan and leave it at the top, sliding the other letters out of sight.
2. If all the children have fans ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partners. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.
3. Ask the children to hold up their fans for you to see.

Variations
- The children have two different fans each.
- The children work in pairs with three different fans.
Quickwrite letters

*Resources*
- Small whiteboards, pens and wipes for each child or pair of children

*Procedure*
1. Say a letter-sound (with the mnemonic and action if necessary) and ask the children to write it, saying the letter formation patter as they do so.
2. If the children are sharing a whiteboard both write, one after the other.

Practising oral blending and segmentation

These blending and segmentation skills were introduced in Phase One with a soft toy that ‘could only speak and understand sound-talk’. Blending and segmenting are the inverse of one another and need regular practice during Phase Two but blending and segmentation with letters should replace oral segmentation and blending as soon as possible.

Purpose
- To give children oral experience of blending phonemes into words so that they are already familiar with the blending process when they start to read words made from the letter-sounds they are being taught

From time to time during the day, say some words in ‘sound-talk’. For example:
- sound-talk a word in an instruction (e.g. Give yourselves a *p-a-t on the back*);
- say some of the children’s names in sound-talk when sending them to an activity or out to play.

Georgie’s gym

*Resources*
- Soft toy
Procedure
Use the soft toy to give instructions, ‘Georgie says’, for example:

1. Stand **u-p**.
2. Put your hands on your **kn-ee-s**, on your **f-ee-t**.
3. Put your finger on your **n-o-se**.
4. Bend one arm round your **b-a-ck**.
5. Wiggle your...

What’s missing?

Resources

- Set of any six CVC objects from the role-play area (e.g. hospital: **soap**, **pen**, **chart**, **book**, **mug**)
- List of nine words for the teacher to read out, which includes the six objects and three additional items (e.g. **bed**, **sheet**, **pill**)
- Soft toy (optional)

Procedure

1. Pretext: you (or the soft toy) need to check that you have collected together all the items you need, which are written on your list.
2. Display the six objects.
3. Say one of the words on the list using sound-talk, ask the children to repeat it and then tell their partners what it is.
4. The children look at the items in front of them to see if the object is there.
**Practising oral segmentation**

**Purpose**
- To give children experience of breaking words up orally into their constituent phonemes so that they can use their knowledge of letter-sounds to spell words.

**Resources**
- Soft toy
- List of words, pictures or objects

**Procedure**
1. Pretext: the toy is deciding what to put into his picnic basket and the children are asked to help him decide, but he only understands sound-talk.
2. Ask the children whether he will need an item (e.g. jam).
3. If the children think he will, ask them to say the word and then tell the toy in sound-talk: jam, j-a-m. The children may benefit from making some action with their hands or arms in time to the sound-talk.
4. Continue with a series of both suitable and unsuitable items (e.g. cheese, mud, cake, nuts, juice, coal, ham, rolls, soap, mugs, mouse).
Teaching and practising blending for reading
VC and CVC words

Blending for reading is a combination of letter recognition and oral blending (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, pages 10–11, for an explanation). Some children need a lot of practice before they grasp CVC blending.

Teaching blending for reading

Sound buttons

Resources
- Words on cards or on magnetic or an interactive whiteboard with sound buttons as illustrated

Procedure
This sequence of suggestions will require building over a few days.

1. Display a VC word (e.g. it, at) and point to or draw a sound button under each letter.
2. Sound-talk and then tell the children the word.
3. Repeat, but ask the children to tell their partners the word after you have sound-talked it.
4. Repeat 2 and 3 with a CVC word.
5. Repeat 4 with a couple more words.
6. Display another word, ask the children to sound-talk it with you and then say the word to their partners.
7. Repeat 6 with a couple more words.
8. Display another word and ask the children to sound-talk it in chorus, wait for you to repeat the sounds after them and then say the word to their partners.
9. Repeat 8 with more words.
10. Finally, display another word and ask the children to sound-talk the word in chorus and then, without your repeating the sounds, say the word to their partners.
11. Repeat 10 with more words.

This procedure can be ‘wrapped up’ in a playful manner by using a toy or a game but the purpose of blending for reading should not be eclipsed as the prime motive for the children’s learning (see ‘Practising blending for reading’ on page 59).
Practising blending for reading

What’s in the box?

Resources
- Set of word cards (e.g. words containing sets 1 and 2 letters – see ‘Bank of suggested words for practising reading and spelling’ on page 69)
- Set of objects or pictures corresponding to the word cards, hidden in a box
- Soft toy (optional)

Procedure
1. Display a word card (e.g. map).
2. Go through the letter recognition and blending process appropriate to the children’s development (see ‘Teaching blending for reading’ on page 58).
3. Ask the toy or a child to find the object or picture in the box.

Variation 1 (to additionally develop vocabulary)
1. Attach some pictures to the whiteboard using reusable sticky pads or magnets or display some objects.
2. Display a word card.
3. Go through the letter recognition and blending process appropriate to the children’s development.
4. Ask a child to place the word card next to the corresponding picture or object.

Variation 2 (when the children are becoming confident blenders)
1. The children sit in two lines opposite one another.
2. Give the children in one line an object or picture and the children in the other line a word card.
3. The children with the word cards read their words and the children with objects or pictures sound-talk the name of their object or picture to the child sitting next to them.
4. Ask the children to hold up their words and objects or pictures so the children sitting in the line opposite can see them.
5. Ask the children with word cards to stand up and go across to the child in the line opposite who has the corresponding object or picture.

6. All the children check that they have the right match.

**Small group with adult**

The following activities can be played without an adult present but when they are completed the children seek out an adult to check their decisions.

**Matching words and pictures**

(Resources as above).

*Procedure*

1. Lay out the word cards and picture cards on a table.
2. Ask the children to match the word cards to the pictures.

**Buried treasure**

*Purpose*

- To motivate children to read the words and so gain valuable reading practice

*Resources*

- About eight cards, shaped and coloured like gold coins, with words and nonsense words on them made up from letters the children have been learning (e.g. *mop*, *cat*, *man*, *mip*, *pon*, *mon*), buried in the sand tray

- Containers representing a treasure chest and a waste bin, or pictures of a treasure chest and a waste bin on large sheets of paper, placed flat on a table

*Procedure*

Ask the children to sort the coins into the treasure chest and the waste bin, putting the coins with proper words on them (e.g. *man*) in the treasure chest and those with meaningless words (e.g. *mon*) in the waste bin.

When children have blended the sounds to read a word a number of times on different occasions, either overtly or under their breath, they will begin to read the word ‘automatically’ without needing to blend.
Teaching and practising segmenting VC and CVC words for spelling

Teaching segmentation for spelling is a combination of oral segmentation and letter recall (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, pages 10–11, for an explanation). Some children need a lot of practice before they grasp CVC segmentation.

### Phoneme frame

#### Resources
- Large two-phoneme or three-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic or interactive whiteboard as illustrated
- Selection of magnetic letters (e.g. sets 1 and 2 letters) displayed on a whiteboard
- List of words (visible only to the teacher)
- Small phoneme frames, each with a selection of magnetic letters, or six-letter fans, one per child or pair of children
- Soft toy (optional)

#### Procedure
This sequence of suggestions will require building over a few days. Children should be able to spell VC words before moving on to spell CVC words.

1. Say a VC word (e.g. *at*) and then say it in sound-talk.
2. Say another VC word (e.g. *it*) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
3. Demonstrate finding the letter *i* from the selection of magnetic letters and put it in the first square on phoneme frame and the letter *t* in the second square, sound-talk *i*-t and then say *it*.
4. Say another VC word (e.g. *in*) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
5. Ask the children to tell you what to put in the first square in the phoneme frame and then in the second.
6. Ask the children to make the word on their own phoneme frames or fans.
7. If all the children have frames or fans, ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partners. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.

8. Ask the children to hold up their frames or fans for you to see.

9. Repeat 4–8 with another VC word (e.g. an).

10. Repeat 1–8 with three-phoneme (CVC) words containing the selection of letters. See ‘Bank of suggested words for practising reading and spelling’ (on page 69). This procedure can also be ‘wrapped up’ in a playful manner by ‘helping a toy’ to write words.

### Practising segmentation

**Phoneme frame**

See ‘Teaching and practising VC and CVC words for spelling’ (on page 61).

**Quickwrite words**

**Resources**

- Large three-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- Display of letters required for words
- List of CVC words (visible only to the teacher)
- Hand-held phoneme frames on whiteboards, pens and wipes, one per child or pair of children

**Procedure**

1. Say a CVC word and, holding up three fingers, sound-talk it, pointing to a finger at a time for each phoneme.

2. Ask the children to do the same and watch to check that they are correct.

3. Holding up the three fingers on one hand, write the letters of the word in the phoneme frame, demonstrating how to refer to the letter display to recall a letter.

4. Ask the children to write the word in their phoneme frames.

5. Say another word and ask the children to sound-talk it to their partners using their fingers.
6. Ask them to sound-talk it in chorus for you to write it.

7. Repeat 5 and 6 but leave the last letter of the word for the children to write on their own.

8. Ask them to sound-talk (with fingers) and write more words you say.

**Full circle**

**Resources**

- List of words (**sat, sit, sip, tip, tap, sap, sat**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**s, a, t, p, i**), one pair of children
- List of words (**pin, pit, sit, sat, pat, pan, pin**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**s, a, t, p, i, n**), one pair of children
- List of words (**pot, pod, pad, sad, mad, mat, pat, pot**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**p, t, d, m, s, o, a**), one pair of children
- List of words (**cat, can, man, map, mop, cop, cap, cat**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**c, t, n, m, p, a, o**), one pair of children
- List of words (**leg, peg, pet, pat, rat, ran, rag, lag, leg**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**l, g, p, t, r, n, e, a**), one pair of children
- List of words (**run, bun, but, bit, hit, him, dim, din, sin, sun, run**), magnetic whiteboards and letters (**r, n, b, t, h, m, s, d, i, u**), one pair of children

**Procedure**

1. Give pairs of children a magnetic whiteboard and the appropriate letters for one game of ‘Full circle’.

2. Say the first word (e.g. **sat**) and ask the children to make it with their letters.

3. Write **sat** on the whiteboard and explain that the children are going to keep changing letters to make lots of words and that when they make **sat** again, they may call out **Full circle**.

4. Leave **sat** written on the whiteboard throughout the activity.

5. Ask the children to sound-talk **sat** and then **sit** and then to change **sat** into **sit** on their magnetic whiteboards.

6. Ask them to sound-talk and blend the word to check that it is correct.

7. Repeat with each word in the list until the first word comes round again and then say **Full circle** with the children.
Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words

There are 100 common words that recur frequently in much of the written material young children read and that they need when they write. Most of these are decodable, by sounding and blending, assuming the grapheme–phoneme correspondences are known, but only 26 of the high-frequency words are decodable by the end of Phase Two. Reading a group of these words each day, by applying grapheme–phoneme knowledge as it is acquired, will help children recognise them quickly. However, in order to read simple captions it is necessary also to know some words that have unusual or untaught GPCs (‘tricky’ words) and these need to be learned (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 15).

Teaching ‘tricky’ high-frequency words

the to I go no

Resources
- Caption containing the tricky word to be learned (see ‘Bank of suggested captions for practising reading’ on page 71)

Procedure
1. Explain that there are some words that have one, or sometimes two, tricky letters.
2. Read the caption, pointing to each word, then point to the word to be learned and read it again.
3. Write the word on the whiteboard.
4. Sound-talk the word and repeat putting sound lines and buttons (as illustrated above) under each phoneme and blending them to read the word.
5. Discuss the tricky bit of the word where the letters do not correspond to the sounds the children know (e.g. in go, the last letter does not represent the same sound as the children know in dog).
6. Read the word a couple more times and refer to it regularly throughout the day so that by the end of the day the children can read the word straight away without sounding out.
**Practising reading high-frequency words**

Children should be given lots of practice with sounding and blending the 26 decodable high-frequency words so that they will be able to read them ‘automatically’ as soon as possible. They also need practice with reading the five tricky words, paying attention to any known letter–sound correspondences.

**Resources**
- Between five and eight high-frequency words, including decodable and tricky words, written on individual cards

**Procedure**
1. Display a word card.
2. Point to each letter in the word as the children sound-talk the letters (as far as is possible with tricky words) and read the word.
3. Say a sentence using the word, slightly emphasising the word.
4. Repeat 1–3 with each word card.
5. Display each word again, and repeat the procedure more quickly but without giving a sentence.
6. Repeat once more, asking the children to say the word without sounding it out.

Give the children a caption incorporating the high-frequency words to read at home.

---

**Introducing two-syllable words for reading**

**Resources**
- Short list of two-syllable words

**Procedure**
1. Write a two-syllable word on the whiteboard making a slash between the two syllables (e.g. **sun/set**).
2. Sound-talk the first syllable and blend it: **s-u-n** sun.
3. Sound-talk the second syllable and blend it: **s-e-t** set.
4. Say both syllables: **sunset**.
5. Repeat and ask the children to join in.
6. Repeat with another word.
Teaching reading and writing captions

Matching

Resources
- Three pictures and a caption for one of the pictures

Procedure
1. Display the caption.
2. Sound-talk and read the first word (e.g. p-a-t pat).
3. Ask the children to repeat after you or join in with you, depending on their progress.
4. After sound-talking (if necessary) and reading the second word, say both words (e.g. a, pat a).
5. Continue with the next word (e.g. d-o-g dog, pat a dog).
6. Display the pictures and ask the children which picture the caption belongs to.

Note: As children get more practice with the high-frequency words, it should not be necessary to continue sound-talking them.

Shared reading

When reading a shared text to the children for the purpose of familiarising them with print conventions (direction, one-to-one word correspondence, etc.) locate occasional VC and CVC words comprising the letters the children have learned, sound-talk and blend them.
Demonstration writing

**Resources**
- Picture of subjects that have VC and CVC names (e.g. a cat sitting in a hat)

**Procedure**
1. Display and discuss the picture.
2. Ask the children to help you write a caption for the picture (e.g. a cat in a hat).
3. Ask them to say the caption all together a couple of times and then say it again to their partners.
4. Ask them to say it again all together two or three times.
5. Ask the children to tell you the first word.
6. Ask what letters are needed and write it.
7. Remind the children that a space is needed between words and put a mark where the next word will start.
8. Ask the children to say the caption again.
9. Ask for the next word and ask what letters are needed.
10. Repeat for each word.

**Shared writing**
When writing in front of the children, take the occasional opportunity to ask them to help you spell words by telling you which letters to write.

**Independent writing**
When the children are writing, for example in role-play areas, their letter awareness along with their ability to segment will allow them to make a good attempt at writing many of the words they wish to use. Even though some of their spellings may be inaccurate, the experience gives them further practice in segmentation and, even more importantly, gives them experience in composition and helps them see themselves as writers.
Assessment

(See Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 16.)

By the end of Phase Two children should:

- give the sound when shown any Phase Two letter, securing first the starter letters s, a, t, p, i, n;
- find any Phase Two letter, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to orally blend and segment CVC words;
- be able to blend and segment in order to read and spell (using magnetic letters) VC words such as if, am, on, up and ‘silly names’ such as ip, ug and ock;
- be able to read the five tricky words the, to, I, no, go.

Some children will not have fully grasped CVC blending and segmentation but may know all the Phase Two letters. CVC blending and segmentation continues throughout Phase Three so children can progress to the next stage even if they have not mastered CVC blending.

Writing

Children’s capacity to write letters will depend on their physical maturity and the teaching approach taken to letter formation. Some children will be able to write all the letters in pencil, correctly formed. Most children should be able to form the letters correctly in the air, in sand or using a paint brush and should be able to control a pencil sufficiently well to write letters such as l, t, i well and h, n and m reasonably well.
Bank of suggested words for practising reading and spelling

The words in this section are made up from the letters taught for use in blending for reading and segmentation for spelling. These lists are not for working through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity (words in italics are from the list of 100 high-frequency words).

### Words using set 1 GPC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at</th>
<th>sat</th>
<th>pat</th>
<th>tap</th>
<th>sap</th>
<th>[a*, as**]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Words using sets 1 and 2 GPCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(+i)</th>
<th>(+n)</th>
<th>(+m)</th>
<th>(+d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>dad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is**</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>nip</td>
<td>mam</td>
<td>dim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sat</td>
<td>pan</td>
<td>mat</td>
<td>dip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pit</td>
<td>pin</td>
<td>map</td>
<td>din</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip</td>
<td>tin</td>
<td>Pam</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pip</td>
<td>tan</td>
<td>Tim</td>
<td>Sid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sip</td>
<td>nap</td>
<td>Sam</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**For ** see next page

### Words using sets 1–3 GPCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(+g)</th>
<th>(+o)</th>
<th>(+c)</th>
<th>(+k)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>kid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gag</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>cot</td>
<td>kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gig</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>cop</td>
<td>Kim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap</td>
<td>pot</td>
<td>cap</td>
<td>Ken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nag</td>
<td>top</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sag</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td>cod</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas</td>
<td>pop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig</td>
<td>God</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>Mog</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Words using sets 1–4 GPCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(+ck)</th>
<th>(+e)</th>
<th>(+u)</th>
<th>(+r)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kick</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>rim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sock</td>
<td>pet</td>
<td>mum</td>
<td>rip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sack</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dock</td>
<td>net</td>
<td>mug</td>
<td>rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick</td>
<td>pen</td>
<td>cup</td>
<td>rag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sick</td>
<td>peg</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>rug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pack</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>tuck</td>
<td>rot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>men</td>
<td>mud</td>
<td>rocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pocket</td>
<td>neck</td>
<td>sunset</td>
<td>carrot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The indefinite article ‘a’ is normally pronounced as a schwa, but this is close enough to the /a/ sound to be manageable.*
Words using sets 1–5 letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(+h)</th>
<th>(+b)</th>
<th>(+f and ff)</th>
<th>(+l and ll)</th>
<th>(+ss)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>of**</td>
<td>lap</td>
<td>ass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>if</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his**</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>leg</td>
<td>hiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>lot</td>
<td>mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hut</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>fin</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>mess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hop</td>
<td>bag</td>
<td>fun</td>
<td>bell</td>
<td>boss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hum</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>fig</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td>fuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>bud</td>
<td>fog</td>
<td>doll</td>
<td>hiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>puff</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>pass (north)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has **</td>
<td>bug</td>
<td>huff</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>kiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hack</td>
<td>bun</td>
<td>cuff</td>
<td>Bill</td>
<td>Tess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hug</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>fan</td>
<td>Nell</td>
<td>fusspot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ben</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>dull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bat</td>
<td></td>
<td>laptop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bucket</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>beckon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the letters l, s and f double at the ends of some words and c is joined by k, it is a good idea to draw a line underneath both letters to show that they represent one phoneme (e.g. hill, pick) when providing words and captions for reading, and encourage children to do so in their writing.

**The sounds represented by f in of, and by s in as, is, has and his should also not cause problems at this stage, especially as children will not learn the letters v and z until several weeks later. Note that /f/ is articulated in the same way as /v/, and /s/ as /z/, apart from the fact that /f/ and /s/ are unvoiced and /v/ and /z/ are voiced.”
Bank of suggested captions for practising reading

Captions with sets 1–4 words
pat a dog  dad and nan
a cat in a hat  a nap in a cot
a sad man  a kid in a cap
a pin on a map  a tin can
pots and pans  cats and dogs

Captions with sets 1–4 words + to, the
a red rug  rats on a sack
get to the top  a pup in the mud
socks on a mat  run to the den
a cap on a peg  mugs and cups
a run in the sun  an egg in an egg cup

Captions, instructions and signs with sets 1–5 words + to, the, no, go
a hug and a kiss  a cat on a bed
on top of the rock  to the top of the hill
a bag of nuts  get off the bus
to huff and puff  no lid on the pan
go to the log hut  pack a pen in a bag
a hot hob  a doll in a cot
sit back to back  a cat and a big fat rat
a duck and a hen

The captions are included to provide a bridge between the reading of single words and the reading of books. They enable children to use and apply their decoding skills on simple material fully compatible with the word-reading level they have reached. This helps them to gain confidence and begin to read simple books.
Letters and sounds: Phase Three
# Phase Three

(ge to 12 weeks)

## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested daily teaching in Phase Three</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested timetable for Phase Three – discrete teaching</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching sets 6 and 7 letters</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching letter names (if not already taught)</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing and teaching two-letter and three-letter GPCs</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising grapheme recognition (for reading) and recall (for spelling)</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising blending for reading</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising segmentation for spelling</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching reading and spelling two-syllable words</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising reading and writing captions and sentences</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank of suggested words, captions and sentences</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Key

This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Summary

Children entering Phase Three will know around 19 letters and be able to blend phonemes to read VC words and segment VC words to spell. While many children will be able to read and spell CVC words, they all should be able to blend and segment CVC words orally. (See Appendix 3: Assessment).

The purpose of this phase is to teach another 25 graphemes, most of them comprising two letters (e.g. **oa**), so the children can represent each of about 42 phonemes by a grapheme (the additional phoneme /zh/ found in the word **vision** will be taught at Phase Five). Children also continue to practise CVC blending and segmentation in this phase and will apply their knowledge of blending and segmenting to reading and spelling simple two-syllable words and captions. They will learn letter names during this phase, learn to read some more tricky words and also begin to learn to spell some of these words.

The teaching materials in this phase suggest an order for teaching letters and provide a selection of suitable words made up of the letters as they are learned and captions and sentences made up of the words. They are for using in the activities – practising blending for reading and segmenting for spelling. These are not lists to be worked through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity.

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to word recognition. Automatic reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal.

Letters

Set 6:  
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>x*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Set 7:  
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zz</td>
<td>qu*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The sounds traditionally taught for the letters **x** and **qu** (/ks/ and /kw/) are both two phonemes, but children do not need to be taught this, at this stage as it does not affect how the letters are used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Graphemes</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
<th>Graphemes</th>
<th>Sample words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>chip</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>farm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>thin/then</td>
<td>ur</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>oi</td>
<td>coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>feet</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td>dear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igh</td>
<td>night</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa</td>
<td>boat</td>
<td>ure</td>
<td>sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo</td>
<td>boot/look</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>corner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Suggested daily teaching in Phase Three

Sequence of teaching in a discrete phonics session

Introduction
Objectives and criteria for success

Revisit and review

Teach

Practise

Apply

Assess learning against criteria

Revisit and review
- Practise previously learned letters or graphemes

Teach
- Teach new graphemes
- Teach one or two tricky words

Practise
- Practise blending and reading words with a new GPC
- Practise segmenting and spelling words with a new GPC

Apply
- Read or write a caption or sentence using one or more tricky words and words containing the graphemes
Suggested timetable for Phase Three – discrete teaching

**Week 1**
- Practise previously learned letters and sounds
- Teach set 6 letters and sounds
- Learn an alphabet song
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise segmentation for spelling
- Practise reading high-frequency words
- Read sentences using sets 1–6 letters and the tricky words no, go, I, the, to

**Week 2**
- Practise previously learned letters and sounds
- Teach set 7 letters and sounds
- Point to the letters in the alphabet while singing the alphabet song
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise segmentation for spelling
- Teach reading the tricky words he, she
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Teach spelling the tricky words the and to
- Practise reading captions and sentences with sets 1–7 letters and he, she, no, go, I, the, to

**Week 3**
- Practise previously learned GPCs
- Teach the four consonant digraphs
- Point to the letters in the alphabet while singing the alphabet song
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise segmentation for spelling
- Teach reading the tricky words we, me, be
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading two-syllable words
- Practise reading captions and sentences
- Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 4**
- Practise previously learned GPCs
- Teach four of the vowel digraphs
- Point to the letters in the alphabet while singing the alphabet song
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise segmentation for spelling
- Teach reading the tricky word was
- Teach spelling the tricky words no and go
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading two-syllable words
- Practise reading captions and sentences
- Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 5**
- Practise previously learned GPCs
- Teach four more vowel digraphs
- Point to the letters in the alphabet while singing the alphabet song
– Practise blending for reading
– Practise segmentation for spelling
– Teach reading the tricky word **my**
– Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
– Teach spelling two-syllable words
– Practise reading captions and sentences
– Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 6**
– Practise previously learned GPCs
– Teach four more vowel digraphs
– Practise letter names
– Practise blending for reading
– Practise segmentation for spelling
– Teach reading the tricky word **you**
– Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
– Practise spelling two-syllable words
– Practise reading captions and sentences
– Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 7**
– Practise previously learned GPCs
– Teach four more vowel digraphs
– Practise letter names
– Practise blending for reading
– Practise segmentation for spelling
– Teach reading the tricky word **they**
– Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
– Practise spelling two-syllable words
– Practise reading captions and sentences
– Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 8**
– Practise all GPCs
– Practise letter names
– Practise blending for reading
– Practise segmentation for spelling
– Teach reading the tricky word **her**
– Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
– Practise spelling two-syllable words
– Practise reading captions and sentences
– Practise writing captions and sentences

**Week 9**
– Practise all GPCs
– Practise letter names
– Practise blending for reading
– Practise segmentation for spelling
– Teach reading the tricky word **all**
– Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
– Practise spelling two-syllable words
– Practise reading captions and sentences
– Practise writing captions and sentences
Week 10
- Practise all GPCs
- Practise letter names
- Practise blending for reading
- Practise segmentation for spelling
- Teach reading the tricky word are
- Practise reading and spelling words
- Practise spelling two-syllable high-frequency words
- Practise reading captions and sentences
- Practise writing captions and sentences

Weeks 11–12 – More consolidation if necessary, or move on to Phase Four.

Teaching sets 6 and 7 letters

Three-part example session for teaching the letter y

Purpose
- To learn to say a discrete phoneme, recognise and write the letter that represents that phoneme

Resources
- Yoyo
- Card showing, on one side, a picture of a yoyo (mnemonic) with the letter $y$ superimposed in black on the yoyo; on the other side, the letter $y$
- Small whiteboards, pens and wipes or paper and pencils for each child

Procedure

Hear it and say it
1. Make a $y$-$y$-$y$-$y$ noise as you produce a yoyo from behind your back.
2. Continue to say $y$ in time to the movement of the yoyo.
3. Ask the children to stand up and pretend to play with a yoyo, saying $y$ each time the yoyo goes down.
4. If any children in the room have names with the $y$ sound in them, say their names, accentuating the $y$ (e.g. YYYolande, YYYYasmine).
5. Do the same with other words (e.g. yes, yellow, accepting suggestions from the children if they offer them.)
**See it and say it**

1. Display the picture of a yoyo.
2. Ask the children to repeat **y-y-y-yoyo**.
3. Move your finger down and round the yoyo and down the string, saying **y-y-y** and saying **yoyo** when you reach the curled bit of the string.
4. Repeat a number of times, encouraging the children to join in.
5. Write **y** next to the yoyo and say **y-y-y-y-y-y**.
6. Ask the children to repeat **y-y-y-y-y-y**.
7. Point to the yoyo and say **yoyo** and to the **y** and say **y-y-y-y-y-y**.
8. Repeat with the children joining in.
9. Put the card behind your back. Then show the yoyo side of the card and ask the children to say **yoyo**; show the **y** side of the card and the children say **y-y-y-y-y-y**. Make it into a game, sometimes showing the **y** and sometimes the **yoyo**.

**Say it and write it**

1. Move your finger slowly down and round the yoyo, and down and round the string, this time saying the letter formation patter: *Down and round the yoyo, down and round the string.*
2. Repeat a couple of times.
3. Repeat a couple more times with the children joining in the patter as they watch you.
4. Ask the children to put their ‘writing finger’ or ‘pencil’ in the air and follow you, also saying the patter. Repeat a couple of times.
5. Ask them to do the same again, either tracing **y** in front of them on the carpet or sitting in a line and tracing the letter on the back of the child in front.
6. Ask them to hold up their hands and write **y** on the palms of their hands.
7. Finally, the children write **y** on whiteboards or paper at tables.

In teaching the remaining sets 6 and 7 letters:

- relate **zz** to **ff**, **ll**, and **ss**;
- explain about **q** always needing **u** after it in English words.
Teaching letter names (if not already taught)

See Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers page 15 for the rationale for teaching and using letter names.

**Resources**
- Alphabet song
- Alphabet frieze including lower and upper case letters (or one frieze for each case)
- Selection of toy animals or pictures of animals

**Procedure (gradually over a period of two or three weeks)**
1. Teach the alphabet song and sing it every day for a week.
2. Display two or three animals (or pictures of animals) and ask the children to indicate which is the cat, the dog, the cow, etc. and then what sound each one makes: *meow*, *woof*, *moo*, etc.
3. Reiterate that one of the animals is a cat and it makes the sound **meow**.
4. Display a letter (e.g. t) and tell the children that it is a t (say its name) and stands for the sound /t/ (say its sound).
5. Display another letter (e.g. m) telling the children what it is. Ask them what sound it stands for (as they already know the sounds of the letters).
6. Display the alphabet frieze and point to the letters as the children sing the alphabet.
7. Continue singing the alphabet daily and pointing to the letters until you are satisfied that all the children know the letter names.
8. Pick out a few letters each day and connect the names with the sounds of the letter.
Introducing and teaching two-letter and three-letter GPCs

Two-part example session for teaching sh

**Resources**
- sh card
- sh words

**Procedure**

**Hear it and say it**
1. Say the grapheme sound with its mnemonic (e.g. putting your fingers to your lips as though quietening everyone).
2. Invite the children to join in.
3. If any children in the room have names with the sh sound in them, say their names, accentuating the shshshsh (e.g. ShshShona, Mishshsha). If Charlene offers her name, accept it and leave the explanation of the letters until ‘See it and say it’ below.
4. Do the same with other words (e.g. shsheep, bushsh, accepting suggestions from the children if they offer them.

**See it and say it**
1. Display sh and explain that this sound needs two letters that the children already know and that to show that two letters stand for one sound we draw a line under them. (Now is the time to tell Charlene that her name certainly does start with /sh/ but that it has a different spelling.)
2. Recall that the children have already seen two letters being used in the recently learned q, which always has a u after it, and also ck and the double letters ll, zz, ff and ss at the ends of some words.
3. Write some sh words on the whiteboard and others as foils (e.g. shut, fish, shop, dash, wishes, shell, rushed, hiss, stop, such).
4. Ask six children to come to the whiteboard and one a time to find the word with a sh grapheme and underline the grapheme.

**Teaching two-letter and three-letter GPCs**

Continue to teach mnemonics for Phase Three GPCs.
Practising grapheme recognition (for reading) and recall (for spelling)

Recognition (for reading)

Flashcards

Purpose
■ To say as quickly as possible the correct sound when a grapheme is displayed

Resources
■ Set of A4 size cards with a grapheme on one side and its mnemonic on the other (e.g. sh on one side and a picture of a finger to the mouth on the other)

Procedure
1. Hold up the grapheme cards the children have learned, one at a time.
2. Ask the children, in chorus, to say the sound of the grapheme (with the action, if used).
3. If the children do not respond, turn the card over to show the mnemonic.
4. Increase the speed of presentation so that the children learn to respond quickly.
5. Sometimes you could ask the children to say the sound for the grapheme in a particular way (e.g. happy, sad, bossy, timid – mood sounds).

You could have an identical set of small cards for using through the day with individuals or small groups.

Interactive whiteboard variation

Resources
■ Interactive whiteboard with graphemes stacked up one behind the other

Procedure
Reveal graphemes one by one by ‘pulling’ them across with your finger, gradually speeding up.
Frieze

**Resources**
- Frieze of graphemes
- Pointing stick/hand

**Procedure**
1. Point to graphemes, one at a time at random, and ask the children to tell you what they are.
2. Gradually increase the speed of presentation.
3. You could ask a child to ‘be teacher’ as this gives you the opportunity to watch and assess the children as they respond.

**Interactive whiteboard variation**

**Resources**
- Interactive whiteboard

**Procedure**
1. Display the graphemes the children have learned.
2. Either point to one grapheme at a time or remotely colour one letter at a time.

---

Recall (for spelling)

**Fans**

**Purpose**
- To find the correct grapheme in response to a sound being spoken

**Resources**
- Fans with a designated set of graphemes (e.g. set 6 and 7 letters j, v, w, x, y, z, qu) or Phase Three graphemes (e.g. ch, sh, th, ng, ee, ai), one per child or pair of children
Procedure
1. Say the sound of a grapheme and ask the children to find the letter on the fan and leave it at the top, sliding the other letters out of sight.
2. If all the children have fans, ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partners. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.
3. Ask the children to hold up their fans for you to see.

Variations
- The children have two different fans each.
- The children work in pairs with three different fans.

Quickwrite letters

Resources
- Small whiteboards, pens and wipes for each child or pair of children

Procedure
1. Say a set 6 or 7 letter-sound (with the mnemonic and action if necessary) and ask the children to write it, saying the letter formation patter as they do so.
2. If the children are sharing a whiteboard both write, one after the other.

Quickwrite graphemes
(Resources and procedure as for ‘Quickwrite letters’ above.)

The children have already learned the formation of the letters that combine to form two-letter and three-letter graphemes but many may still need to say the mnemonic patter for the formation as they write. When referring to the individual letters in a grapheme, the children should now be encouraged to use letter names as letters do not stand for their Phase Two sounds when they form part of two-letter and three-letter graphemes.

If you have taught the necessary handwriting joins, it may, at this point, be helpful to teach the easier digraphs as joined units (e.g. ch, th, ai, ee, oa, oo, ow, oi—see the reference to handwriting in Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 15).
Practising blending for reading

What’s in the box?

Resources
- Set of word cards (e.g. with words containing sets 6 and 7 letters and Phase Three graphemes: see page 100–102 for suggestions)
- Set of objects or pictures corresponding to the word cards, hidden in a box
- Soft toy (optional)

Procedure
1. Display a word card.
2. Go through the grapheme recognition and blending process, placing a sound button below each grapheme, as illustrated. Draw attention to the long sound buttons under the two-letter and three-letter graphemes.
3. Ask the toy or a child to find the corresponding object or picture in the box.

Variation 1 (to additionally develop vocabulary)
1. Attach some pictures to the whiteboard using reusable sticky pads or magnets or display some objects.
2. Display a word card.
3. Go through the grapheme recognition and blending process as above.
4. Ask a child to place the word card next to the corresponding picture or object.

Variation 2 (when children are confident blenders)
1. Children sit in two lines opposite one another.
2. Give the children in one line an object or picture and the children in the other line a word card.
3. Ask the children with word cards to read their words and ask the children with objects or pictures to ‘sound-talk’ the name of their object or picture to the child sitting next to them.
4. Ask the children to hold up their words and objects or pictures so the children sitting in the line opposite can see them.
Ask the children with word cards to stand up and go across to the child in the line opposite who has the corresponding object or picture.

All the children check that they have the right match.

## Countdown

### Resources

- List of Phase Three words
- Sand timer, stop clock or some other way of time-limiting the activity

### Procedure

1. Display the list of words, one underneath the other.
2. Explain to the children that the object of this activity is to read as many words as possible before the sand timer or stop clock signals ‘Stop’.
3. Start the timer.
4. Call a child’s name out and point to the first word.
5. Ask the child to sound-talk the letters and read the word.
6. Repeat with another child reading the next word, until the time runs out.
7. Record the score.

The next time the game is played, the objective is to beat this score.

With less confident children this game could be played with all the children reading the words together.

## Sentence substitution

### Purpose

To practise reading words in sentences

### Resources

- A number of prepared sentences at the children’s current level (see suggestions for sentences for substitution on page 104)
- List of alternative words for each sentence
- Soft toy or puppet (optional)
Procedure
1. Write a sentence on the whiteboard (e.g. Mark fed the cat).
2. Ask the children to read the sentence with their partners and raise their hands when they have finished.
3. All the children read it together.
4. Using the toy or puppet, rub out one word in the sentence and substitute a different word (e.g. Mark fed the dog).
5. Ask the children to read the sentence with their partners and raise their hands if they think it makes sense.
6. All the children read it together.
7. Continue substituting words to make new sentences – Mark hid the cat; Gail hid the cat; Gail hid the moon – asking the children to read each new sentence to decide whether it makes sense or is ridiculous.

Small group with adult
The following activities can be played without an adult present but when they are completed the children seek out an adult to check.

Matching words and pictures
(Resources as ‘What’s in the box?’ above.)

Procedure
1. Lay out the words and picture cards on a table.
2. Ask the children to match up the words to the pictures.

Buried treasure

Purpose
- To motivate children to read the words and so gain valuable reading practice

Resources
- About eight cards, shaped and coloured like gold coins with words and nonsense words on them made up from graphemes the children have been learning (e.g. jarm, win, jowd, yes, wug, zip), buried in the sand tray
- Containers representing a treasure chest and a waste bin, or pictures of a treasure chest and a waste bin on large sheets of paper, placed flat on the table.
Procedure
1. Ask the children to sort the coins into the treasure chest and the waste bin, putting the coins with proper words on them (e.g. win) in the treasure chest and those with meaningless words (e.g. jowd) in the waste bin.

Sorting

Resources
- Words, such as the names of farm and zoo animals (e.g. zebra, camel, hen, chimpanzee, panda, cow, yak, sheep, goat, duck)
- Sorting frame (e.g. farm animals, zoo animals)

Procedure
1. Ask the children to sort the animals by reading the words and putting them into the correct frame.

Practising segmentation for spelling

Phoneme frame

Resources
- Large three-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- Selection of magnetic letters or graphemes displayed on the whiteboard (the graphemes should be either custom-made as units or individual letters stuck together using sticky tape e.g. ch, oa)
- List of words
- Small phoneme frames, each with a selection of magnetic letters or six-letter or six-grapheme fans, one per child or pair of children

Procedure

Words made up of sets 6 and 7 letters
1. Say a CVC word (e.g. jam) and then say it in sound-talk.
2. Say another CVC word (e.g. wet) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
3. Demonstrate finding the letter \textit{w} from the selection of magnetic letters and put it into the first square on the phoneme frame, put the letter \textit{e} in the second square, and \textit{t} in the last square. Sound-talk \textit{w-e-t} and then say \textit{wet}.

4. Say another CVC word (e.g. \textit{zip}) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.

5. Ask the children to tell you what to put in the first square in the phoneme frame, then in the next and so on.

6. Ask the children to make the word on their own phoneme frames or fans.

7. If all the children have phoneme frames or fans, ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partner. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.

8. Ask the children to hold up their phoneme frames or fans for you to see.

9. Repeat 4–8 with another CVC word.

10. Continue with other CVC words.

\textit{Phase Three two-letter and three-letter graphemes}

Follow the same procedure as for sets 6 and 7 words. It is important that the graphemes are units, not separate letters.

This procedure can also be ‘wrapped up’ in a playful manner by helping a toy to write the words.

\textit{Quickwrite words}

\textit{Resources}

- Large three-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- List of words for use by the teacher
- Display of the magnetic letters required for the words on the list
- Handheld phoneme frames on whiteboards, pens and wipes, one per child or pair of children

\textit{Procedure}

1. Say a word and, holding up three fingers, sound-talk it, pointing to a finger at a time for each phoneme.

2. Ask the children to do the same and watch to check that they are correct.

3. Holding up the three fingers on one hand, write the letters of the word in the phoneme frame, consulting the letter display.
4. Ask the children to write the word in their phoneme frames.

5. Say another word and ask the children to sound-talk it to their partners, using their fingers.

6. Ask them to sound-talk it in chorus for you to write it.

7. Repeat 5 and 6 but leave the last letter of the word for the children to write on their own.

8. Ask them to sound-talk (with fingers) and write more words that you say.

**Full circle**

**Resources**

*When the graphemes sh, ch, th and ng have been learned*

- List of words (ship, chip, chin, thin, than, can, cash, rush, rang, ring, rip, ship), magnetic whiteboards and letters (sh, ch, th, ng, p, n, r, c, a, i), for each pair of children

- List of words (song, long, lock, shock, shop, chop, chip, chick, thick, thing, sing, song), magnetic whiteboards and letters (ch, sh, ck, th, ng, s, l, p, i, o), for each pair of children

*When the graphemes for the new vowel sounds have been learned*

- List of words (car, card, lard, laid, maid, mood, moon, moan, moat, mart, cart, car), magnetic whiteboards and letters (ar, ai, oo, oa, c, d, l, m, n, t), for each pair of children

- List of words (light, right, root, room, roam, road, raid, paid, pain, main, mail, sail, sigh, sight, light), magnetic whiteboards and letters (ai, igh, oo, oa, l, t, r, m, d, p, n, s), for each pair of children

The graphemes should either be custom-made as units or individual letters need to be stuck together using sticky tape (e.g. ch, oa).

**Procedure**

1. Give pairs of children a magnetic whiteboard and appropriate letters and graphemes.

2. Say the first word (e.g. ship) and ask the children to make it with their letters.

3. Write ship on the whiteboard and explain to the children that they are going to keep changing letters to make lots of words and that when they make ship again, they may call out Full circle; leave ship written on the whiteboard throughout the activity.
4. Ask them to sound-talk ship and then chip and then to change ship into chip on their magnetic whiteboards.

5. Ask them to sound-talk and blend the word to check that it is correct.

6. Repeat with each word in the list until the first word comes round again and then say Full circle with the children.

Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words

There are 100 common words that recur frequently in much of the written material young children read and that they need when they write. Most of these are decodable, by sounding and blending, assuming the grapheme–phoneme correspondences are known, but only 26 of the high-frequency words are decodable by the end of Phase Two and a further 12 are decodable by the end of Phase Three. These are will, with, that, this, then, them, see, for, now, down, look and too. Reading a group of these words each day, by applying grapheme-phoneme knowledge as it is acquired, will help children recognise them quickly. However, in order to read simple captions it is necessary also to know some words that have unusual or untaught GPCs, ‘tricky’ words, and these need to be learned (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 15, for an explanation).

Learning to read tricky words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>me</th>
<th>be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• •</td>
<td>__</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>was</th>
<th>my</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>her</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>all</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• • •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
<td>• •</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Resources

- Caption containing the tricky word to be learned.

Procedure

1. Explain that there are some words which have one or sometimes two tricky letters in them.

2. Read the caption, pointing to each word, then point to the word to be learned and read it again.

3. Write the word on the whiteboard.
4. Sound-talk the word, and repeat, putting sound lines and buttons (as illustrated above) under each phoneme and blending them to read the word.

5. Discuss the tricky bit of the word where the letters do not correspond to the sounds the children know (e.g. in *he*, the last letter does not represent the same sound as the children know in *hen*).

6. Read the word a couple more times and refer to it regularly through the day so that by the end of the day the children can read the word straight away, without sounding out.

Note: Emphasise the pattern in the words *he*, *she*, *we*, *me*, *be*. The word *the*, where the letter *e* is pronounced /ee/ before a vowel (e.g. *the apple*) is the only other tricky word following this pattern.

Practising high-frequency words

The 12 decodable and 12 tricky high-frequency words need lots of practice in the manner described below so that children will be able to read them ‘automatically’ as soon as possible.

**Resources**
- Between five and eight high-frequency words, including decodable and tricky words, written on individual cards

**Procedure**
1. Display a word card.
2. Point to each grapheme as the children sound-talk the graphemes (as far as is possible with tricky words) and read the word.
3. Say a sentence using the word, slightly emphasising the word.
4. Repeat 1–3 with each word card.
5. Display each word again and repeat the procedure more quickly but without giving a sentence.
6. Repeat once more, asking the children to say the word without sounding it out.

Give the children a caption or sentence incorporating the high-frequency words to read at home.
**Learning to spell and practising tricky words**

| the | to | no | go | l |

Children should be able to read these words before being expected to learn to spell them.

**Resources**
- Whiteboards and pens, preferably one per child

**Procedure**
1. Write the word to be learned on the whiteboard and check that everyone can read it.
2. Say a sentence using the word.
3. Sound-talk the word raising a finger for each phoneme.
4. Ask the children to do the same.
5. Discuss the letters required for each phoneme, using letter names.
6. Ask the children to trace the shape of the letters on their raised fingers.
7. Rub the word off the whiteboard and ask them to write the word on their whiteboards.
Teaching reading and spelling two-syllable words

**Reading two-syllable words**

*Resources*
- Short list of two-syllable words (for use by the teacher)

*Procedure*
1. Write a two-syllable word on the whiteboard putting a slash between the two syllables (e.g. **car/park**).
2. Sound-talk the first syllable and blend it: **c-ar car**.
3. Sound-talk the second syllable and blend it: **p-ar-k park**.
4. Say both syllables: **car park**.
5. Repeat and ask the children to join in.
6. Repeat with another word.

**Introducing spelling two-syllable words**

*Resources*
- List of words (for use by the teacher)
- Magnetic letters or pens and whiteboards for each child

*Procedure*
1. Say a word (e.g. **farmyard**) then clap each syllable and ask the children to do the same.
2. Repeat with two or three more words.
3. Clap the first word again and tell the children that the first clap is **farm** and the second is **yard**.
4. Ask the children for the sounds in **farm** and write them, underlining the digraph.
5. Repeat with the second syllable.
6. Read the completed word.
7. Repeat with another word.
8. Ask children to do the same on their whiteboards either by using magnetic letters or by writing.
Practising reading and writing captions and sentences

Matching (with the teacher)

Resources
- Three pictures and a caption or sentence for one of the pictures

Procedure
1. Display the caption or sentence.
2. Sound-talk and read the first word (e.g. f-i-sh fish).
3. After sound-talking and reading the second word, say both words (e.g. a-n-d and, fish and).
4. Continue with the next word (e.g. ch-i-p-s chips, fish and chips).
5. Continue to the end of the caption.
6. Display the pictures.
7. Ask the children which picture the caption belongs to.
8. As children get more practice with the high-frequency words, it should not be necessary to continue sound-talking them.

Matching (independent of the teacher)

Resources
- Set of pictures and corresponding captions or sentences

Procedure
Ask the children to match the pictures and captions.

Drawing

Resources
- Two captions or sentences
- Drawing materials
**Procedure**

1. Display a caption or sentence.
2. Ask the children to read it with their partners and draw a quick sketch.
3. Repeat with the next caption.

**‘I can …’ books**

**Purpose**
- To practise reading

**Resources**
- Small zigzag book with ‘I can run’ (jog, hop, sing, etc.) sentences on one side of each page and a corresponding picture drawn by a child on the other
- Small four-page empty zigzag books made from half sheets of A4 paper (cut longwise)
- Action words and phrases (jog, run, hop, bang nails, mop up, cook food, sing songs, fish with bait, chop wood) on cards
- Paper copies of the action words and phrases
- Materials for writing, drawing and sticking

**Procedure**

1. Read the completed zigzag book to the children.
2. Show them the empty books for them to make their own.
3. Display an action word or phrase card, one a time for the children to read.
4. Make available paper copies of the action words and phrases, the empty zigzag books, writing, drawing and sticking materials for the children to make their own zigzag books.
Yes/no questions

**Resources**
- A number of prepared questions (see page 104 for suggestions) on card or on an interactive whiteboard
- Cards with ‘yes’ on one side and ‘no’ on the other, one per pair of children

**Procedure**
1. Give pairs of children yes/no cards.
2. Display a yes/no question for the children to read.
3. Ask them to confer with their partners and decide whether the response is ‘yes’ or ‘no’.
4. Ask the children to show their cards.
5. Invite a pair to read a question.
6. Repeat with another question.

**Shared reading**
When reading a shared text to the children locate occasional VC, CV and CVC words comprising the letters the children have learned and ask the children to read them.

---

**Writing captions**

**Demonstration writing**

**Resources**
- Pictures of subjects that have VC, CV and CVC names (e.g. a shed)

**Procedure**
1. Display and discuss a picture.
2. Ask the children to help you write a caption for the picture (e.g. tools in a shed).
3. Ask them to say the caption all together a couple of times and then again to their partners.
4. Ask them to say it again all together two or three times.
5. Ask the children to tell you the first word.
6. Ask what letters are needed and write the word.
7. Remind the children that a space is needed between words: put a mark where
   the next word will start.
8. Ask the children to say the caption again.
9. Ask for the next word and ask what letters are needed.
10. Repeat for each word.

Writing sentences
Resources and procedure as for 'Writing captions' but as part of the procedure add
to the sentence a capital letter and a full stop.

Shared writing
When writing in front of the children, take the occasional opportunity to ask them to
help you spell words by telling you which letters to write.

Independent writing
When children are writing, for example in role-play areas, their growing knowledge
of letters along with their ability to segment will allow them to make a good attempt
at writing many of the words they wish to use. Even though some of their spellings
may be inaccurate, the experience gives them further practice in segmentation and,
even more importantly, gives them experience in composition and helps them see
themselves as writers. (See the note on invented spelling in Notes of Guidance for
Practitioners and Teachers, page 13.)
Assessment

(See Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 16.)

By the end of Phase Three children should:

- give the sound when shown all or most Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes;
- find all or most Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to blend and read CVC words (i.e. single-syllable words consisting of Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes);
- be able to segment and make a phonemically plausible attempt at spelling CVC words (i.e. single-syllable words consisting of Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes);
- be able to read the tricky words he, she, we, me, be, was, my, you, her, they, all, are;
- be able to spell the tricky words the, to, I, no, go;
- write each letter correctly when following a model.
Bank of suggested words, captions and sentences for use in Phase Three

The words in this section are made up from the letters taught for use in blending for reading and segmentation for spelling. These lists are not for working through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity. (Words in italics are from the list of 100 high-frequency words.)

### Words and sentences using sets 1–7 letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1–6 GPCs</th>
<th>1–7 GPCs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(+j)</td>
<td>(+y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+v)</td>
<td>(+z/zz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+w)</td>
<td>(+qu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+x)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words using sets 1–6 GPCs</th>
<th>1–7 GPCs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>jam</strong></td>
<td><strong>yap</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>van</strong></td>
<td><strong>zip</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>will</strong></td>
<td><strong>quiz</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jill</strong></td>
<td><strong>yes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vat</strong></td>
<td><strong>Zak</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>win</strong></td>
<td><strong>quit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jet</strong></td>
<td><strong>yet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vet</strong></td>
<td><strong>buzz</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wag</strong></td>
<td><strong>quick</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>box</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jog</strong></td>
<td><strong>yell</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vic</strong></td>
<td><strong>jazz</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>web</strong></td>
<td><strong>quack</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tax</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jack</strong></td>
<td><strong>yap</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ravi</strong></td>
<td><strong>yap</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wig</strong></td>
<td><strong>z/zz</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>six</strong></td>
<td><strong>quack</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jet</strong></td>
<td><strong>jet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lag</strong></td>
<td><strong>yet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>visit</strong></td>
<td><strong>quack</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cobweb</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vixen</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>jacket</strong></td>
<td><strong>yet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>velvet</strong></td>
<td><strong>yet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wicked</strong></td>
<td><strong>yet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Yes/no questions with words containing sets 1–6 GPCs

- Is the sun wet?
- Can wax get hot?
- Has a fox got six legs?
- Can a vet fix a jet?
- Will a pen fit in a box?

- Can men jog to get fit?
- Has a pot of jam got a lid?
- Can a taxi hop?
- Can a van go up a hill?
- Has a cat got a web?

### Yes/no questions with words containing sets 1–7 GPCs

- Can a duck quack?
- Is a zebra a pet?
- Can dogs yap?
- Can a fox get wet?
- Will a box fit in a van?

- Can a rabbit yell at a man?
- Can a hen peck?
- Is a lemon red?
- Is a robin as big as a jet?
- Can a web buzz?
Sentences using words containing sets 1–7 GPCs and **he, we and she**

She will fill the bucket at the well.  
If the dog has a bad leg, the vet can fix it.  
Will Azam and Liz win the quiz? Yes!  
He did up the zip on Zinat’s jacket.  
The fox and vixen had cubs in a den.  
We can get the big bed into the van.

Sentences are offered here to give children practice in reading and understanding short texts which are fully decodable.

**Words and sentences using Phase Three graphemes**

**Words using the four consonant digraphs**

Each of these words contains the target grapheme but no other Phase Three graphemes. This means that the Phase Three graphemes can be taught in any order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ch</th>
<th>sh</th>
<th>th</th>
<th>ng</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chop</td>
<td>ship</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chin</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chug</td>
<td>shed</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>hang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>shell</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>such</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>wing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chip</td>
<td>shock</td>
<td>moth</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chill</td>
<td>cash</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td>king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>bash</td>
<td>thick</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich</td>
<td>hush</td>
<td>path (north)</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>rush</td>
<td>bath (north)</td>
<td>ping-pong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sentences with set 1–7 letters plus the four consonant digraphs and some tricky words**

I am in such a rush to get to the shops.  
A man is rich if he has lots of cash.  
Natasha sang a song to me.  
The van will chug up the long hill.  
Sasha had a quick chat with Kath and me.  
A moth can be fat, but its wings are thin.  
The ship hit the rocks with a thud.  
Lots of shops sell chicken as well as fish and chips.  
Josh had a shock as he got a bash on the chin.
## Words using the Phase Three vowel graphemes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ai</th>
<th>ee</th>
<th>igh</th>
<th>oa</th>
<th>oo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>coat</td>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gail</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>sigh</td>
<td>load</td>
<td>zoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hail</td>
<td>weep</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>goat</td>
<td>boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>feet</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>loaf</td>
<td>hoof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aim</td>
<td>jeep</td>
<td>night</td>
<td>road</td>
<td>zoom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail</td>
<td>seem</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>soap</td>
<td>cool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>sight</td>
<td>oak</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tail</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>toad</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>deep</td>
<td>tight</td>
<td>foal</td>
<td>moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bait</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>tonight</td>
<td>boatman</td>
<td>rooftop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ar</th>
<th>or</th>
<th>ur</th>
<th>ow</th>
<th>oi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>fork</td>
<td>burn</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark</td>
<td>cord</td>
<td>urn</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>card</td>
<td>cork</td>
<td>burp</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>coil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cart</td>
<td>sort</td>
<td>curl</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>join</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>born</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>bow</td>
<td>soil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jar</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td>surf</td>
<td>pow!</td>
<td>toil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>fort</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td>row</td>
<td>quoit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market</td>
<td>torn</td>
<td>turnip</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farmyard</td>
<td>cornet</td>
<td>curds</td>
<td>towel</td>
<td>tinfoil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ear</th>
<th>air</th>
<th>ure</th>
<th>er</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>hammer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dear</td>
<td>fair</td>
<td>lure</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>assure</td>
<td>rocker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>lair</td>
<td>insure</td>
<td>ladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gear</td>
<td>pair</td>
<td>pure</td>
<td>supper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>cairn</td>
<td>cure</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td></td>
<td>secure</td>
<td>boxer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td></td>
<td>manure</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rear</td>
<td></td>
<td>mature</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>banner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Words with a combination of two Phase Three graphemes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cheep</th>
<th>sheet</th>
<th>thing</th>
<th>thorn</th>
<th>teeth</th>
<th>coach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>harsh</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>church</td>
<td>singer</td>
<td>shear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>waiter</td>
<td>arch</td>
<td>chain</td>
<td>faith</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharp</td>
<td>poach</td>
<td>shoal</td>
<td>farmer</td>
<td>shorter</td>
<td>longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torch</td>
<td>orchard</td>
<td>north</td>
<td>porch</td>
<td>thicker</td>
<td>booth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Captions

tools in the shed
ships in port
boats on the river
fish and chips on a dish
a goat and a cow

sixteen trees
looking at books
the light of a torch
digging in the soil

goats in a farmyard

Sentences

Mark and Carl got wet in the rain.
Jill has fair hair but Jack has dark hair.
I can hear an owl hoot at night.
Bow down to the king and queen.
I can see a pair of boots on the mat.
The farmer gets up at six in the morning.
Jim has seven silver coins.
Nan is sitting in the rocking-chair.
Gurdeep had a chat with his dad.
It has been hot this year.

On the farm
I will soon visit my nan at her farm.
She will let me feed the hens and chickens.
They peck up corn in the farmyard.
She has goats and cows as well as hens.
She gets the hens into a shed at night – foxes might get them.

In town
You and I can meet on the corner.
We can get the bus to the fish and chip shop.
Janaki and her sister may join us.
They can get fish and chips, too.
Then we can all run to the park.

In a wigwam
Kevin has a wigwam in the garden.
Alex, Jon and Jeevan visit him.
Kevin's dad cooks chicken for them on hot coals.

At the river
Max and Vikram sail a wooden boat.
Jeff chucks bits of bun in the river for the ducks.
Yasmin sits on a rock and looks for fish.
Having food in the wigwam is fun. Tanya and Yasha see an eel.
Then they sing songs. Shep the dog sits down in the mud and
gets in a mess.

**In the woods**
Chip the dog runs to the woods.
He is looking for rabbits but sees a fox.
The fox sees him and rushes off to its den.
Chip dashes after it but cannot see it.
He feels sad and runs back to his kennel.

**Sentences and substitute words for ‘Sentence substitution’**

See page 86.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mark fed the cat</th>
<th>dog</th>
<th>hid</th>
<th>Gail</th>
<th>moon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The sheep are in the shed</td>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>farmyard</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can hear a goat</td>
<td>toad</td>
<td>song</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They might meet in the town</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The shop is on the corner</td>
<td>church</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>shark</td>
<td>boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has worn red shorts</td>
<td>boots</td>
<td>boats</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He sat down on the carpet</td>
<td>chair</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>soil</td>
<td>weeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has had lots of good books</td>
<td>food</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>Joan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Join me in the pool</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>park</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>coach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is a good shop for chips</td>
<td>coats</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes/no questions suitable for the end of Phase Three**

See page 97.

Is rain wet? Will all shops sell nails?
Can a boat sail? Can a chicken sit on a chair?
Is all hair fair? Can a coach zoom into the air?
Is the moon far off? Are the teeth of sharks sharp?
Are fish and chips food? Are fingers as long as arms?
Is it dark at night? Can a coat hang on a hook?
Is a thick book thin? Can a hammer chop wood?
Can we get wool from sheep? Will a ship sail on a road?
Will six cows fit in a car? Can ducks see fish in rivers?
Can coins sing a song? Can you hear bees buzzing now?
Letters and Sounds: Phase Four
Phase Four

(4–6 weeks)

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested daily teaching in Phase Four</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested timetable for Phase Four – discrete teaching</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising grapheme recognition (for reading) and recall (for spelling)</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching blending for reading CVCC and CCVC words</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching segmenting for spelling CVCC and CCVC words</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising reading and spelling words with adjacent consonants</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising reading and spelling two-syllable words</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practising reading and writing and sentences</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank of suggested words and sentences for use in Phase Four</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key

This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Summary

Children entering Phase Four will be able to represent each of 42 phonemes by a grapheme, and be able to blend phonemes to read CVC words and segment CVC words for spelling. They will have some experience in reading simple two-syllable words and captions. They will know letter names and be able to read and spell some tricky words.

The purpose of this phase is to consolidate children’s knowledge of graphemes in reading and spelling words containing adjacent consonants and polysyllabic words.

The teaching materials in this phase provide a selection of suitable words containing adjacent consonants. These words are for using in the activities – practising blending for reading and segmenting for spelling. This is not a list to be worked through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity.

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to word recognition. Automatic reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal.

Suggested daily teaching in Phase Four

Sequence of teaching in a discrete phonics session

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>Objectives and criteria for success</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Revisit and review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess learning against criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Revisit and review

- Practise previously learned graphemes

Teach

- Teach blending and segmentation of adjacent consonants
- Teach some tricky words
Practise
- Practise blending and reading words with adjacent consonants
- Practise segmentation and spelling words with adjacent consonants

Apply
- Read or write sentences using one or more high-frequency words and words containing adjacent consonants

Suggested timetable for Phase Four – discrete teaching

Week 1
- Practise recognition and recall of Phase Two and Three graphemes and reading and spelling CVC words
- Teach and practise reading CVCC words
- Teach and practise spelling CVCC words
- Teach reading the tricky words said, so
- Teach spelling the tricky words he, she, we, me, be
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences

Week 2
- Practise recognition and recall of Phase Two and Three graphemes and reading and spelling CVC words
- Teach and practise reading CCVC words
- Teach and practise spelling CCVC words
- Teach reading the tricky words have, like, some, come
- Teach spelling the tricky words was, you
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences

Week 3
- Practise recognition and recall of Phase Two and Three graphemes
- Practise reading words containing adjacent consonants
- Practise spelling words containing adjacent consonants
- Teach reading the tricky words were, there, little, one
- Teach spelling the tricky words they, all, are
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences

Week 4
- Practise recognition and recall of Phase Two and Three graphemes
- Practise reading words containing adjacent consonants
- Practise spelling words containing adjacent consonants
- Teach reading the tricky words do, when, out, what
- Teach spelling the tricky words my, her
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences
Practising grapheme recognition for reading and recall for spelling

**Grapheme recognition**

**Flashcards**

*Purpose*
- To say as quickly as possible the correct sound when a grapheme is displayed

*Resources*
- Set of A4 size cards, one for each grapheme, or graphemes stacked on interactive whiteboard screen

*Procedure*
1. Hold up or slide into view the grapheme cards the children have learned, one at a time.
2. Ask the children to say, in chorus, the sound of the grapheme.
3. Increase the speed of presentation so that children learn to respond quickly.

**Frieze**

*Resources*
- Frieze of graphemes
- Pointing stick/hand

*Procedure*
1. Point to or remotely highlight graphemes, one at a time at random, and ask the children to tell you their sounds.
2. Gradually increase the speed.
3. You could ask a child to ‘be teacher’ as this gives you the opportunity to watch and assess the children as they respond.
Quickwrite graphemes

Resources

- Small whiteboards, pens and wipes, one per child or pair of children

Procedure

1. Say the sound of a grapheme (with the mnemonic and action if necessary) and ask the children to write it, saying the letter formation patter as they do so.

2. If the children are sharing a whiteboard both write, one after the other.

The children have already learned the formation of the letters that combine to form two-letter and three-letter graphemes but many may still need to say the mnemonic patter for the formation as they write. When referring to the individual letters in a grapheme, the children should be encouraged to use letter names (as the t in th does not have the sound of t as in top).

If you have taught the necessary handwriting joins, it may, at this point, be helpful to teach the easier digraphs as joined units (e.g. ch, th, ai, ee, oo, ow, oi— see the reference to handwriting in Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 15).

Teaching blending for reading CVCC and CCVC words

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to fluent word recognition. Automatic and effortless reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal. By repeated sounding and blending of words, children get to know them, and once this happens, they should be encouraged to read them straight off in reading text, rather than continuing to sound and lend them aloud because they feel that this is what is required. They should continue, however, to use overt or silent phonics for those words which are unfamiliar.
**Procedure**

1. Display a CVC word on the whiteboard which can be preceded by one consonant to become a CCVC word (e.g. **spot**).
2. Cover the first letter and read the CVC word remaining (e.g. **pot**).
3. Reveal the whole word and point to the first letter and all say it together (e.g. **ssssss**) holding the sound as you point to the next consonant and slide them together and continue to sound-talk and blend the rest of the word.
4. Repeat with other words beginning with **s** (e.g. **spin**, **speck**, **stop**).
5. Move on to words where the initial letter sound cannot be sustained (e.g. **trip**, **track**, **twin**, **clap**, **glad**, **gran**, **glass** (**north**), **grip**).

**CVCC words**

1. Display a CVC word on the whiteboard which can be extended by one consonant to become a CVCC word (e.g. **tent**).
2. Cover the final consonant and ‘sound-talk’ and blend the first three graphemes (e.g. **t-e-n ten**).
3. Ask the children to do the same.
4. Sound-talk the word again, **t-e-n** and as you say the **n**, reveal the final consonant and say **-t tent**.
5. Repeat 4 with the children joining in.
6. Repeat with other words such as **bend**, **mend**, **hump**, **bent**, **damp**.

**CCVC words**

1. Display a CVC word on the whiteboard which can be preceded by one consonant to become a CCVC word (e.g. **spot**).
2. Cover the first letter and read the CVC word remaining (e.g. **pot**).
3. Reveal the whole word and point to the first letter and all say it together (e.g. **ssssss**) holding the sound as you point to the next consonant and slide them together and continue to sound-talk and blend the rest of the word.
4. Repeat with other words beginning with **s** (e.g. **spin**, **speck**, **stop**).
5. Move on to words where the initial letter sound cannot be sustained (e.g. **trip**, **track**, **twin**, **clap**, **glad**, **gran**, **glass** (**north**), **grip**).
Teaching segmenting for spelling CVCC and CCVC words

**Resources**
- Large four-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- List of words (visible only to the teacher) – see ‘Bank of suggested words and sentences for use in Phase Four’ on page 126
- Selection of magnetic letters (required to make the list of words) displayed on the whiteboard
- Small phoneme frames, each with the same selection of magnetic letters or six-grapheme fans, one per child or pair of children

**Procedure**
1. Say a word (e.g. *lost*) and then say it in sound-talk slightly accentuating the penultimate consonant *l-o-s-t*.
2. Repeat with another word.
3. Say another word (e.g. *dump*) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
4. Make the word in the phoneme frame with the magnetic letters.
5. Say another word and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
6. Ask the children to tell you what letters to put in the phoneme frame.
7. Ask the children to make the word on their own phoneme frames or fans.
8. If all the children have frames or fans, ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partners. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.
9. Ask the children to hold up their frames or fans for you to see.
10. Repeat with other words.

This procedure can also be ‘wrapped up’ in a playful manner by ‘helping a toy’ to write words.
CCVC words

Follow the procedure for teaching segmenting CVCC words, accentuating the second consonant (e.g. bring).

Practising reading and spelling words with adjacent consonants

Practising blending for reading

Large group – What’s in the box?

Resources
- Set of word cards giving words with adjacent consonants: see ‘Bank of suggested words and sentences for use in Phase Four’, on page 126
- Set of objects or pictures corresponding to the word cards, hidden in a box
- Soft toy (optional)

Procedure
1. Display a word card.
2. Go through the letter recognition and blending process.
3. Ask the toy or a child to find the object in the box.

Variation
1. The children sit in two lines opposite one another.
2. Give the children in one line an object or picture and the children in the other line a word card.
3. The children with word cards read their words and the children with objects or pictures sound-talk the name of their object or picture to the child sitting next to them.
4. Ask the children to hold up their words and objects or pictures so the children sitting in the line opposite can see them.
5. Ask the children with word cards to stand up and go across to the child in the line opposite who has the corresponding object or picture.
6. All the children check that they have the right match.
Countdown

_Resources_
- List of Phase Four words
- Sand timer, stop clock or some other way of time-limiting the activity

_Procedure_
1. Display the list of words, one underneath the other.
2. Explain to the children that the object of this activity is to read as many words as possible before the sand timer or stop clock signals ‘stop’.
3. Start the timer.
4. Call a child’s name out and point to the first word.
5. Ask the child to sound-talk the letters and say the word.
6. Repeat with another child reading the next word until the time runs out.
7. Record the score.

The next time the game is played, the objective is to beat this score.

With less confident children this game could be played with all the children reading the words together.

Sentence substitution

_Purpose_
- To practise reading words in sentences

_Resources_
- A number of prepared sentences at the children’s current level (see ‘Bank of suggested words and sentences for use in Phase Four’, page 128, for suggestions)
- List of alternative words for each sentence

_Procedure_
1. Write a sentence on the whiteboard (e.g. _The man burnt the toast_).
2. Ask the children to read the sentence with their partners and raise their hands when they have finished.
3. All read it together.
4. Rub out one word in the sentence and substitute a different word (e.g. The man burnt the towel).

5. Ask the children to read the sentence with their partners and raise their hands if they think it makes sense.

6. All read it together.

7. Continue substituting words – The man burnt the towel; The girl burnt the towel; The girl burnt the milk; The girl brings the milk – asking the children to read the new sentence to decide whether it still makes sense or is nonsense.

Small group with adult

The following activities can be played without an adult present but when they are completed the children seek out an adult to check their decisions.

Matching words and pictures

(Resources as for ‘What’s in the box?’ above.)

**Procedure**

1. Lay out the word cards and pictures or objects on a table (involving the toy if you are using one)

2. Ask the children to match the words to the objects or pictures.

Buried treasure

**Purpose**

- To motivate children to read the words and so gain valuable reading practice

**Resources**

- About eight cards, shaped and coloured like gold coins with words and nonsense words on them, made up from letters the children have been learning (e.g. skip, help, shelf, drep, plank, trunt), in the sand tray

- Containers representing a treasure chest and a waste bin, or pictures of a treasure chest and a waste bin on large sheets of paper, placed flat on the table

**Procedure**

Ask the children to sort the coins into the treasure chest and the waste bin, putting the coins with proper words on them (e.g. skip) in the treasure chest and those with meaningless words (e.g. drep) in the waste bin.
Phoneme frame

Resources
- Large four-phoneme, five-phoneme or six-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- Selection of magnetic graphemes displayed on the whiteboard (the graphemes should be either custom-made as units or individual letters stuck together using sticky tape e.g. \textit{ch}, \textit{oa})
- List of words (for use by the teacher)
- Small phoneme frames, each with a selection of magnetic letters or nine-grapheme fans, one per child or pair of children

Procedure
1. Say a CVCC word (e.g. \textit{hump}) and then say it in sound-talk.
2. Say another CVCC word (e.g. \textit{went}) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk, showing a finger for each phoneme.
3. Demonstrate finding and placing the graphemes in the squares of the phoneme frame, sound-talk, \textit{w-e-n-t} and then say \textit{went}.
4. Say another CVCC word (e.g. \textit{milk}) and ask the children to tell their partners what it would be in sound-talk.
5. Ask the children to tell you what to put in the first square in the phoneme frame, then in the next and so on.
6. Ask the children to make the word on their own phoneme frames or fans.
7. If all the children have frames or fans, ask them to check that they have the same answer as their partners. If the children are sharing, they ask their partners whether they agree.
8. Ask the children to hold up their frames or fans for you to see.
9. Repeat 4–8 with CCVC words and other words containing adjacent consonants.

This procedure can also be ‘wrapped up’ in a playful manner by ‘helping a toy’ to write words.
Quickwrite words

Resources
- Large four-phoneme, five-phoneme or six-phoneme frame drawn on a magnetic whiteboard
- List of words (for use by the teacher)
- Display of magnetic letters required for the words on the list
- Handheld phoneme frames on whiteboards, pens and wipes, one per child or pair of children

Procedure
1. Say a CCVC word and, holding up four fingers, sound-talk it, pointing to a finger at a time for each phoneme.
2. Ask the children to do the same and watch to check that they are correct.
3. Holding up the four fingers on one hand, write the letters of the word in the phoneme frame, consulting the letter display.
4. Ask the children to write the word in their phoneme frames.
5. Say another word and ask the children to sound-talk it to their partners using their fingers.
6. Ask them to sound-talk it in chorus for you to write it.
7. Repeat 5 and 6 but leave the last grapheme of the word for the children to write on their own.
8. Ask them to sound-talk (with fingers) and write more words that you say.
Teaching and practising high-frequency (common) words

There are 100 common words that recur frequently in much of the written material young children read and that they need when they write. Most of these are decodable, by sounding and blending, assuming the grapheme–phoneme correspondences are known. By the end of Phase Two 26 of the high-frequency words are decodable, a further 12 are decodable by the end of Phase Three and six more are decodable at Phase Four. These are: went, it’s, from, children, just and help. Reading a group of these words each day, by applying grapheme–phoneme knowledge as it is acquired, will help children recognise them quickly. However, in order to read simple sentences it is necessary also to know some words that have unusual or untaught GPCs (‘tricky’ words) and these need to be learned (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 15).

Learning to read tricky words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>said</th>
<th>so</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>were</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>there</th>
<th>little</th>
<th>one</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when</th>
<th>out</th>
<th>what</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>●</td>
<td>●</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Resources
- Caption containing the tricky word to be learned

Procedure
1. Remind the children of some words with tricky bits that they already know (e.g. they, you, was).
2. Read the caption, pointing to each word, and then point to the word to be learned and read it again.
3. Write the word on the whiteboard.
4. Sound-talk the word and repeat putting sound lines and buttons (as illustrated above) under each phoneme and blending them to read the word.
5. Discuss the tricky bit of the word where the letters do not correspond to the sounds the children know (e.g. in so, the last letter does not represent the same sound as the children know in sock).
6. Read the word a couple more times and refer to it regularly through the day so that by the end of the day the children can read the word straight away without sounding out.
Note: Although ending in the letter e, some, come and have are not split digraph words. It is easiest to suggest that the last phoneme is represented by a consonant and the letter e. It is not possible to show the phonemes represented by graphemes in the word one.

Practising reading high-frequency words

The six decodable and 14 tricky high-frequency words need lots of practice in the manner described below so that children will be able to read them ‘automatically’ as soon as possible.

Resources

- Between five and eight high-frequency words, including decodable and tricky words, written on individual cards

Procedure

1. Display a word card.
2. Point to each grapheme as the children sound-talk the graphemes (as far as is possible with tricky words) and read the word.
3. Say a sentence using the word, slightly emphasising the word.
4. Repeat 1–3 with each word card.
5. Display each word again, and repeat the procedure more quickly but without giving a sentence.
6. Repeat once more, asking the children to say the word without sounding it out.

Give the children a caption or sentence incorporating the high-frequency words to read at home.

Learning to spell and practising tricky words

he • • she —— me • • be • • was • • • my —— you —— her —— they —— all • • are

Children should be able to read these words before being expected to learn to spell them.
Resources

- Whiteboards and pens, preferably one per child

Procedure

1. Write the word to be learned on the whiteboard and check that all the children can read it.
2. Say a sentence using the word.
3. Sound-talk the word raising a finger for each phoneme.
4. Ask the children to do the same.
5. Discuss the letters required for each phoneme, using letter names.
6. Ask the children to trace the shape of the letters on their raised fingers.
7. Rub the word off the whiteboard and ask the children to write the word on their whiteboards.
Practising reading and spelling two-syllable words

**Reading two-syllable words**

**Resources**
- Short list of two-syllable words (for use by the teacher)

**Procedure**
1. Write a two-syllable word on the whiteboard making a slash between the two syllables (e.g. lunch/box).
2. Sound-talk the first syllable and blend it: l-u-n-ch lunch.
3. Sound-talk the second syllable and blend it: b-o-x box.
4. Say both syllables – lunchbox.
5. Repeat and ask the children to join in.
6. Repeat with another word.

**Spelling two-syllable words**

**Resources**
- List of two-syllable words (for use by the teacher)
- Whiteboards and magnetic letters or pens for each child

**Procedure**
1. Say a word (e.g. desktop), clap each syllable and ask the children to do the same.
2. Repeat with two or three more words.
3. Clap the first word again and tell the children that the first clap is on desk and the second is on top.
4. Ask the children for the sounds in desk and write the graphemes.
5. Repeat with the second syllable.
6. Read the completed word.
7. Repeat with another word.
8. Ask children to do the same on their whiteboards either by using magnetic letters or writing.
Practising reading and writing sentences

Matching (with the teacher)

Resources
- Three pictures and a sentence corresponding to one of the pictures

Procedure
1. Display the pictures and the sentence (e.g. It is fun to camp in a tent).
2. Sound-talk (if necessary) and read the first word (e.g. I-t It).
3. After reading the second word, say both words (e.g. i-s is – It is).
4. Continue with the next word (e.g. f-u-n fun – It is fun).
5. Continue to the end of the sentence.
6. Ask the children which picture the sentence belongs to.
7. As children get more practice with high-frequency words, it should not be necessary to continue sound-talking them.

Matching (independent of the teacher)

Resources
- Set of pictures and corresponding sentences

Procedure
Ask the children to match the pictures and sentences.

Drawing

Resources
- Two sentences
Procedure
1. Display a sentence.
2. Ask the children to read it with their partners and draw a quick sketch.
3. Repeat with the next sentence.

‘I can…’ books

Purpose
- To practise reading

Resources
- Small zigzag book with ‘I can skip’ (jump, swim, clap, creep, swing, paint, etc.) sentences on one side of each page and a corresponding picture drawn by a child on the other
- Small four-page empty zigzag books made from half sheets of A4 paper (cut longwise)
- Action phrases (drink my milk, toast some cheese, punch a bag, hunt the slipper, brush my hair) on cards
- Paper copies of the action phrases, one per child
- Materials for writing, drawing and sticking

Procedure
1. Read the completed zigzag book to the children.
2. Show them the empty books for them to make their own.
3. Display the phrase cards, one a time, for the children to read.
4. Make available paper copies of the action phrases, the empty zigzag books, and writing, sticking and drawing materials for the children to make their own zigzag books.

Yes/no questions

Resources
- A number of prepared questions (see page 128 for suggestions) on card or an interactive whiteboard
- Cards with ‘yes’ on one side and ‘no’ on the other, one per pair of children
Procedure
1. Give pairs of children yes/no cards.
2. Display a yes/no question for the children to read.
3. Ask them to confer with their partners and decide whether the response is ‘yes’ or ‘no’.
4. Ask the children to show their cards.
5. Invite a pair to read a question.
6. Repeat with another question.

Shared reading
When reading a shared text to the children occasionally locate words containing adjacent consonants and ask the children to read them.

Reading across the curriculum
Give the children simple written instructions. For instance, you could ask them to collect certain items from the outside area such as three sticks, some red string, etc. Children can read the labels on storage areas so they can collect the items they need and put them away.

Writing sentences

Resources
- Picture including subjects with names that contain adjacent consonants and a sentence describing the picture

Procedure
1. Display and discuss the picture.
2. Ask the children to help you write a sentence for the picture (e.g. The clown did the best tricks).
3. Ask them to say the sentence all together a couple of times and then again to their partners.
4. Ask them to say it again all together two or three times.
5. Ask the children to tell you the first word.
6. Ask what letters are needed and write the word.
7. Ask about or point out the initial capital letter.
8. Remind the children that a space is needed between words and put a mark where the next word will start.
9. Ask the children to say the sentence again.
10. Ask for the next word and ask what letters are needed.
11. Repeat for each word.
12. Ask about or point out the full stop at the end of the sentence.

**Shared writing**

When writing in front of the children, take the occasional opportunity to ask them to help you spell words by telling you which letters to write.

**Independent writing**

When children are writing, for example in role-play areas, their letter knowledge along with their ability to segment will allow them to make a good attempt at writing many of the words they wish to use. Even though some of their spellings may be inaccurate, the experience gives them further practice in segmentation and, even more importantly, gives them experience in composition and helps them see themselves as writers (see the section on invented spelling in *Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers*, page 13). You will expect to see some of the tricky high-frequency words such as *the, to, go, no, he, she, we* and *me* spelled correctly during Phase Four.

**Assessment**

*(See *Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers*, page 16.)*

By the end of Phase Four children should:

- give the sound when shown any Phase Two and Phase Three grapheme;
- find any Phase Two and Phase Three grapheme, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to blend and read words containing adjacent consonants;
- be able to segment and spell words containing adjacent consonants;
- be able to read the tricky words *some, one, said, come, do, so, were, when, have, there, out, like, little, what*;
- be able to spell the tricky words *he, she, we, me, be, was, my, you, her, they, all, are*;
- write each letter, usually correctly.
Bank of suggested words and sentences for use in Phase Four

The words in this section are made up from the letters taught for use in blending for reading and segmentation for spelling. These lists are not for working through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity (words in italics are from the list of 100 high-frequency words).

**CVCC words**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words using sets 1–7 letters</th>
<th>Words using Phase Three graphemes</th>
<th>Polysyllabic words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>went</td>
<td>best</td>
<td>fond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>tilt</td>
<td>gust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tent</td>
<td>tuft</td>
<td>milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>damp</td>
<td>golf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hump</td>
<td>bust</td>
<td>jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>band</td>
<td>camp</td>
<td>fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dent</td>
<td>gift</td>
<td>melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felt</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>(north)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gulp</td>
<td>tusk</td>
<td>thank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamp</td>
<td>limp</td>
<td>ask*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>soft</td>
<td>fast*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hump</td>
<td>pond</td>
<td>last*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land</td>
<td>husk</td>
<td>daft*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nest</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>task*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>bank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>link</td>
<td>bunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In the North of England, where the letter *a* is pronounced /æ/, these are appropriate as Phase Four words.*
### CCV and CCVC words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words using sets 1–7 letters</th>
<th>Words using Phase Three graphemes</th>
<th>Polysyllabic words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>grip</td>
<td>green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>glad</td>
<td>fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spot</td>
<td>twin</td>
<td>steep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frog</td>
<td>sniff</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step</td>
<td>plum</td>
<td>spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>gran</td>
<td>smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speck</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>spoil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td>clap</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grab</td>
<td>drop</td>
<td>spoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track</td>
<td>(north)*</td>
<td>sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spin</td>
<td>glass*</td>
<td>thrush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flag</td>
<td>grass*</td>
<td>trash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brass*</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>bleed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CCVCC, CCCVC and CCCVCC words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words using sets 1–7 letters</th>
<th>Words using Phase Three graphemes</th>
<th>Polysyllabic words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>crust</td>
<td>(north)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crisp</td>
<td>tramp</td>
<td>graft*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trend</td>
<td>grunt</td>
<td>grant*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>blast*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>drift</td>
<td>grasp*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glint</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slant*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twist</td>
<td>skunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frost</td>
<td>thank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cramp</td>
<td>blink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plump</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp</td>
<td>blank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blend</td>
<td>trunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sentences

Fred and Brett spent a week in Spain.
I kept bumping into things in the dark.
Milk is good for children’s teeth.
The clown did tricks with a chimpanzee.
The frog jumps in the pond and swims off.
I must not tramp on the flowers.
A crab crept into a crack in the rock.
A drip from the tap drops in the sink.
I can hear twigs snapping in the wind.
It is fun to camp in a tent.

Sentences and substitute words for ‘Sentence substitution’
(See page 114)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The man burnt the toast.</th>
<th>towel</th>
<th>girl</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>brings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The frog swam across the pool.</td>
<td>pond</td>
<td>flag</td>
<td>jumps</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gran went to get fresh fish.</td>
<td>Stan</td>
<td>needed</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td>grill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trisha took a book off the shelf.</td>
<td>grabs</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>Krishnan</td>
<td>spoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A clock stood on the wooden chest.</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>lamp</td>
<td>soft</td>
<td>cabinet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The train had to stop in the fog.</td>
<td>hand</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>storm</td>
<td>truck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fran took a scarf as a gift for Brad.</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>Vikram</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>snail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will travel to the Swiss Alps next week.</td>
<td>winter</td>
<td>punch</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fred has spent lots of cash this year.</td>
<td>Gretel</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>bricks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We had sandwiches for a snack.</td>
<td>plums</td>
<td>slugs</td>
<td>picnic</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/no questions
(See page 123)

Can a clock get cross?  Are you afraid of thunderstorms?
Can crabs clap hands?  Can a spoon grab a fork?
Are you fond of plums?  Do chimps come from Mars?
Did a shark ever jump up a tree?  Can letters have stamps stuck on them?
Can frogs swim in ponds?  Do trains run on tracks?
Is the moon green?  Will a truck go up steep stairs?
Can you bang on a big drum?  Do some dogs have black spots?
Have you ever slept in a tent?  Are you glad when you have a pain?
Are all children good at sport?  Can we see the stars on a clear night?
Have you seen a trail left by a snail?
Letters and Sounds: Phase Five
Phase Five
(throughout Year 1)

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested daily teaching in Phase Five</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested timetable for Phase Five – discrete teaching</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reading</strong></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Teaching further graphemes for reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Teaching alternative pronunciations for graphemes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Practising recognition of graphemes in reading words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Teaching and practising reading high-frequency (common) words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Practising reading two-syllable and three-syllable words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Practising reading sentences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spelling</strong></td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Teaching alternative spellings for phonemes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Learning to spell and practising high-frequency words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Practising spelling two-syllable and three-syllable words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Practising writing sentences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assessment</strong></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bank of words and other materials for use in Phase Five activities</strong></td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key**

This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Summary

Children entering Phase Five are able to read and spell words containing adjacent consonants and some polysyllabic words. (See Appendix 3: Assessment.)

The purpose of this phase is for children to broaden their knowledge of graphemes and phonemes for use in reading and spelling. They will learn new graphemes and alternative pronunciations for these and graphemes they already know, where relevant. Some of the alternatives will already have been encountered in the high-frequency words that have been taught. Children become quicker at recognising graphemes of more than one letter in words and at blending the phonemes they represent. When spelling words they will learn to choose the appropriate graphemes to represent phonemes and begin to build word-specific knowledge of the spellings of words.

The teaching materials in this phase provide a selection of suitable words and sentences for use in teaching Phase Five. These words are for using in the activities – practising blending for reading and segmenting for spelling. These are not lists to be worked through slavishly but to be selected from as needed for an activity.

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to word recognition. Automatic reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal.

Suggested daily teaching in Phase Five

Sequence of teaching in a discrete phonics session

Introduction

Objectives and criteria for success

Revisit and review

Teach

Practise

Apply

Assess learning against criteria
Revisit and review
- Practise previously learned graphemes
- Practise blending and segmentation

Teach
- Teach new graphemes
- Teach tricky words

Practise
- Practise blending and reading words with the new GPC
- Practise segmenting and spelling words with the new GPC

Apply
- Read or write a sentence using one or more high-frequency words and words containing the new graphemes

Suggested timetable for Phase Five
- discrete teaching

Weeks 1–4
- Practise recognition and recall of Phase Two, Three and Five graphemes as they are learned
- Teach new graphemes for reading (about four per week)
- Practise reading and spelling words with adjacent consonants and words with newly learned graphemes
- Learn new phoneme /zh/ in words such as treasure
- Teach reading the words oh, their, people, Mr, Mrs, looked, called, asked
- Teach spelling the words said, so, have, like, some, come, were, there
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading and spelling polysyllabic words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences

Weeks 5–7
- Practise recognition and recall of graphemes and different pronunciations of graphemes as they are learned
- Teach alternative pronunciations of graphemes for reading (about four per week)
- Practise reading and spelling words with adjacent consonants and words with newly learned graphemes
- Teach reading the words **water, where, who, again, thought, through, work, mouse, many, laughed, because, different, any, eyes, friends, once, please**
- Teach spelling the words **little, one, do, when, what, out**
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading and spelling polysyllabic words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences

**Weeks 8–30**

- Practise recognition and recall of graphemes and different pronunciations of graphemes as they are learned
- Teach alternative spellings of phonemes for spelling
- Practise reading and spelling words with adjacent consonants and words with newly learned graphemes
- Teach spelling the words **oh, their, people, Mr, Mrs, looked, called, asked**
- Practise reading and spelling high-frequency words
- Practise reading and spelling polysyllabic words
- Practise reading sentences
- Practise writing sentences
READING

It must always be remembered that phonics is the step up to fluent word recognition. Automatic and effortless reading of all words – decodable and tricky – is the ultimate goal. By repeated sounding and blending of words, children get to know them, and once this happens they should be encouraged to read them straight off in reading text, rather than continuing to sound and blend them aloud because they feel that this is what is required. They should continue, however, to use overt or silent phonics for words that are unfamiliar.

Teaching further graphemes for reading

New graphemes for reading

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ay day</th>
<th>oy boy</th>
<th>wh when</th>
<th>a-e make</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ou out</td>
<td>ir girl</td>
<td>ph photo</td>
<td>e-e these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie tie</td>
<td>ue blue</td>
<td>ew new</td>
<td>i-e like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea eat</td>
<td>aw saw</td>
<td>oe toe</td>
<td>o-e home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>au Paul</td>
<td>u-e rule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is probably unnecessary to continue teaching mnemonics for new graphemes. As children build up their speed of blending and read more and more words automatically, many of them will assimilate new graphemes in the course of their reading. To ensure that all children know these graphemes, they should be quickly introduced through high-frequency words such as those suggested above.
Example session for split digraph i-e

**Purpose**
- To teach a split digraph through showing its relationship to a known grapheme

**Resources**
- Grapheme cards t, m, p, n, and ie × 2
- Scissors
- Reusable sticky pads

**Procedure**
1. Ask the children to sound-talk and show fingers for the word *tie* while a child makes it using the grapheme cards.
2. Ask the children what needs to be added to *tie* to make *time*.
3. Hold the *m* against the word *tie* thus making *tiem*, sound-talk it and explain that although there are graphemes for each phoneme this is not the correct spelling of *time*, as words like this are written slightly differently.
4. Cut the *ie* grapheme card between the *i* and the *e*, explaining that in this word we need to separate the two letters in the grapheme and tuck the final sound in between.
5. Stick the four letters onto the whiteboard and draw a line joining the *i* and the *e*.
6. Repeat with *pie* and make into *pine*.
7. Display or write on the whiteboard the high-frequency words that use the split digraph (e.g. *like, make, came, made*).
Teaching alternative pronunciations for graphemes

Known graphemes for reading: common alternative pronunciations

|  i fin, find  |  ow cow, blow  |  y yes, by, very  |
|  o hot, cold  |  ie tie, field |  ch chin, school, chef |
|  c cat, cent  |  ea eat, bread |  ou out, shoulder, could, you |
|  g got, giant |  er farmer, her |  |
|  u but, put (south) |  a hat, what |  |

**Purpose**

- To recognise that alternative pronunciations of some graphemes in some words need to be tried out to find the correct one

**Resources**

- Words on individual cards, half of the words illustrating one pronunciation of a grapheme and half illustrating the other (e.g. milk, find, wild, skin, kind, lift, child) – see ‘Known graphemes for reading: alternative pronunciations’ on page 152

**Procedure**

1. Display a word where the vowel letter stands for the sound learned for it in Phase Two (e.g. milk) and ask the children to sound-talk and read it.

2. Display a word with the alternative pronunciation (e.g. find), sound-talk and read it using the incorrect pronunciation and therefore saying a nonsense word.

3. Discuss with the children which grapheme might have a different pronunciation (e.g. find).

4. Sound-talk the word again and read the word, this time correctly.

5. Display another word.

6. Ask the children to sound-talk it to their partners and decide the correct pronunciation.

7. Choose a pair of children and ask them to read the word.

8. Continue with more words.
Practising recognition of graphemes in reading words

Flashcards

Purpose
- To say as quickly as possible the correct sound when a grapheme is displayed

Resources
- Set of A4 size cards, one for each grapheme (or graphemes stacked on interactive whiteboard screen)

Procedure
1. Hold up or slide into view the grapheme cards the children have learned, one at a time.
2. Ask the children to say, in chorus, the sound of the grapheme.
3. Increase the speed of presentation so that children learn to respond quickly.

Frieze

Resources
- Frieze of graphemes
- Pointing stick/hand

Procedure
1. Point to or remotely highlight graphemes, one at a time at random, and ask the children to tell you their sounds.
2. Gradually increase the speed.
3. You could ask a child to ‘be teacher’ as this gives you the opportunity to watch and assess the children as they respond.
Quick copy

Purpose
■ To recognise two-letter and three-letter graphemes in words and not read them as individual letters

Resources
■ Words using some newly learned graphemes in which all graphemes of two or more letters are underlined (e.g. pound, light, boy, sigh, out, joy)
■ Same words without the underlining (e.g. pound, light, boy, sigh, out, joy)
■ Magnetic whiteboards with all the appropriate graphemes to make the words, one per child
■ Extra letters to act as foils (e.g. if the grapheme oy is needed, provide separate letters o and y as well)

If custom-made graphemes are unavailable, attach letters together with sticky tape to make graphemes.

Procedure
1. Display a word in which the grapheme is underlined.
2. Ask the children to make the word as quickly as possible using their magnetic letters and saying the phonemes (e.g. t-oy) and then reading the word.
3. Check that, where appropriate, children are using joined letters, not the separate letters.
4. Repeat with each word with an underlined grapheme.
5. Repeat 1–4 with words without the underlined graphemes, being particularly vigilant that children identify the two-letter or three-letter graphemes in the words.

Countdown

Resources
■ List of Phase Five words
■ Sand timer, stop clock or some other way of time-limiting the activity
**Procedure**

1. Display the list of words, one underneath the other.
2. Explain to the children that the object of this activity is to read as many words as possible before the sand timer or stop clock signals ‘stop’.
3. Start the timer.
4. Call a child’s name out and point to the first word.
5. Ask the child to sound-talk the letters and say the word.
6. Repeat with another child reading the next word, until the time runs out.
7. Record the score.

The next time the game is played, the objective is to beat this score.

With less confident children this game could be played with all the children together reading the words.

**Sentence substitution**

**Purpose**

- To practise reading words in sentences

**Resources**

- A number of prepared sentences at the children’s current level (see ‘Word reading activities’, on page 158, for suggestions)
- List of alternative words for each sentence

**Procedure**

1. Write a sentence on the whiteboard (e.g. **Paul eats peas with his meat**).
2. Ask the children to read the sentence with their partners and raise their hands when they have finished.
3. All read it together.
4. Rub out one word in the sentence and substitute a different word (e.g. **Paul eats beans with his meat**).
Learning to read tricky words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>oh</th>
<th>their</th>
<th>people</th>
<th>Mr*</th>
<th>Mrs*</th>
<th>looked</th>
<th>called</th>
<th>asked</th>
<th>would</th>
<th>should</th>
<th>could</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*As shortened forms of words, Mr and Mrs cannot be taught in this way. You could write out Mister in full and show that the shortened version is the first and last letters, Mr. Then show how Mrs is a shortened version of Mistress.

The -ed morpheme at the end of looked, called and asked designates simple past tense and can be pronounced in a number of ways (/t/ in looked and asked, and /d/ in called).

**Resources**

- Caption or sentence containing the tricky word to be learned
**Procedure**

1. Remind the children of some of the other words with ‘tricky bits’ that they already know (e.g. **the, come, her**).

2. Read the caption pointing to each word, then point to the word to be learned and read it again.

3. Write the word on the whiteboard.

4. Sound-talk the word, and repeat putting sound lines and buttons (as illustrated on page 140) under each phoneme and blending them to read the word.

5. Colour and discuss the bit of the word that does not conform to standard GPC, i.e. the tricky bit (e.g. in **could**, the middle grapheme is not one of the usual spellings for the /oo/ sound).

6. Read the word a couple of times with the children joining in, and refer to it regularly during the day so that by the end of the day the children can read the word straight away without sounding out.

7. Ask the children do the same with their partners.

---

**Practising reading high-frequency words**

Both the decodable and tricky high-frequency words need lots of practice so that children will be able to read them ‘automatically’ as soon as possible.

**Resources**

- Between five and eight high-frequency words, including decodable and tricky words, written on individual cards

**Procedure**

1. Display a word card.

2. Point to each grapheme as the children sound-talk the graphemes (as far as is possible with tricky words) and read the word.

3. Say a sentence using the word, slightly emphasising the word.

4. Repeat 1–3 with each word card.

5. Display each word again, and repeat the procedure more quickly but without giving a sentence.

6. Repeat once more, asking the children to say the word without sounding it out.

Give the children a caption or sentence incorporating the high-frequency words to read at home.
Practising reading two-syllable and three-syllable words

**Resources**
- Short list of two-syllable and three-syllable words (for use by the teacher)

**Procedure**
1. Write a two-syllable word on the whiteboard making a slash between the two syllables (e.g. thir/teen).
2. Sound-talk the first syllable and blend it: th-ir. thir.
3. Sound-talk the second syllable and blend it: t-ee-n. teen.
4. Say both syllables: thirteen.
5. Repeat and ask the children to join in.
6. Repeat with another word.

Practising reading sentences

**Yes/no questions**

**Resources**
- A number of prepared questions (see page 159 for suggestions) on card or an interactive whiteboard
- Cards for each pair of children with ‘yes’ on one side and ‘no’ on the other, one per pair of children

**Procedure**
1. Give pairs of children yes/no cards.
2. Display a yes/no question for the children to read.
3. Ask them to confer with their partners and decide whether the response is ‘yes’ or ‘no’.
4. Ask them to show their cards.
5. Sometimes invite a pair to read the question.
6. Repeat 2–5 with another question.
Variation

Choosing three right answers

Resources
- A number of prepared questions or statements, three correct answers and one incorrect answer (see suggestions on page 159)

Procedure
As for ‘Yes/no questions’ except that children decide which of the four possible answers are correct.

Homographs

Purpose
- To learn that when two words look the same the correct pronunciation can be worked out in the context of the sentence

Resources
- Six sentences using homographs, for example:
  - Wind the bobbin up!
  - She will read it to her little brother.
  - The wind blew the leaves off the trees.
  - You have to bow when you meet the queen.
  - He read about the frightening monster.
  - Robin Hood used a bow and arrows.

Procedure
1. Display a sentence and read it using the incorrect pronunciation for the homograph.
2. Ask the children which word doesn’t fit the sense of the sentence.
3. Try the alternative pronunciation and reread the sentence.
4. Display another sentence and ask the children to read it with their partners so it makes sense.
5. Ask a pair to read it aloud.
6. Continue with more sentences.
### SPELLING

**Teaching alternative spellings for phonemes**

**Alternative spellings for each phoneme**

(See ‘Bank of words and other materials/activities for use in Phase Five’ on page 154.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/c/</th>
<th>/ch/</th>
<th>/f/</th>
<th>/j/</th>
<th>/l/</th>
<th>/m/</th>
<th>/n/</th>
<th>/ng/</th>
<th>/r/</th>
<th>/s/</th>
<th>/sh/</th>
<th>/v/</th>
<th>/w/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>tch</td>
<td>ph</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>mb</td>
<td>kn</td>
<td>n(k)</td>
<td>wr</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td></td>
<td>ve</td>
<td>wh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ck</td>
<td></td>
<td>dge</td>
<td>gn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/e/</th>
<th>/i/</th>
<th>/o/</th>
<th>/ul (south)</th>
<th>/ai/</th>
<th>/ee/</th>
<th>/igh/</th>
<th>/oa/</th>
<th>/oo/</th>
<th>/oo/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>(w)a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ay</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>ew</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ar/</th>
<th>/or/</th>
<th>/ur/</th>
<th>/ow/</th>
<th>/oi/</th>
<th>/ear/</th>
<th>/air/</th>
<th>/ure/</th>
<th>/er/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a (south)</td>
<td>aw</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>ou</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>ere</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>au</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>uu</td>
<td></td>
<td>eer</td>
<td></td>
<td>ear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>al</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**New phoneme**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/zh/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phoneme spotter

**Purpose**
- To generate words containing the same target phoneme with a range of different spellings
- To draw attention to the common ways to spell the target sound as a way of learning to spell the word

**Resources**
- Phoneme spotter story (see examples on pages 160–165):
  - enlarged copy of the story for display
  - copies of the story, one per child or pair of children
- coloured pencils or pens

**Procedure**
1. Display the enlarged version of the story.
2. Read the story to the children and ask them to listen out for the focus phoneme.
3. Remove the story from view and reread it, asking the children to put their thumbs up whenever they hear the focus phoneme.
4. Display the text again and read the title, pointing to each word.
5. Underline any word containing the focus phoneme.
6. Repeat with the first paragraph.
7. Ask the children to do the same on their copies.
8. Continue reading the story slowly while the children follow word by word, underlining each word that has the focus phoneme.
9. Ask the children to tell you which phonemes they spotted in the second paragraph and underline them on the enlarged copy.
10. Write on the whiteboard the first six underlined words in the story.
11. Ask the children to read the first word, sound-talk it and tell their partners what graphemes stand for the focus phoneme.
12. Ask a pair to tell you.
13. Repeat with the remaining words.
14. Notice the different graphemes that represent the focus phoneme.
15. Draw three columns on the whiteboard and write a different grapheme at the top of each column (e.g. ai, ay, a-e).
16. Write one word from the story under each grapheme (e.g. rain, day, lane).

17. Ask the children to draw three columns in their books or on paper and write the words from the story in the appropriate column.

**Variation**

**Rhyming word generation**

**Procedure**

1. Write a word on the whiteboard (e.g. rain).

2. Ask the children to suggest words that rhyme (e.g. lane, Spain) and write them on the whiteboard.

3. Write another word containing the same vowel phoneme (e.g. date) and ask the children to suggest words that rhyme and write them down.

4. Repeat with another word (e.g. snake).

5. Repeat with one more word, this time one that has the vowel phoneme at the end of it (e.g. day).

6. Pick any word and ask the children what grapheme represents the vowel phoneme.

7. Children discuss with their partners, write the grapheme on their whiteboards and hold them up.

8. Draw columns on the whiteboard and write the grapheme at the head of one column.

9. Ask the children to find a word with a different spelling of the phoneme.

10. Write the grapheme at the head of another column.

11. Repeat with another word until all alternative spellings for the vowel phonemes are written as column headers (e.g. ai, ay, a-e, ea, aigh, eigh).

12. Write one word under each grapheme (e.g. rain, day, date, great, straight, eight).

13. Ask the children to draw columns in their books or on paper and write the words from the whiteboard in the appropriate column.

14. Follow with ‘Best bet’ (below).
Best bet

Purpose

- To develop children's knowledge of spelling choices

Resources

- Lists of words generated from ‘Phoneme spotter’ (above) or a variation, under grapheme headers, for example as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common</th>
<th>Rare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ay</td>
<td>ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tray</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Whiteboards and pens, one per child

Procedure

1. Display the lists of words.

2. Discuss which columns have most words in them and which the least. Point out that in English some spelling patterns are very rare but that some very common words (e.g. they) have rare spellings.

3. Ask the children if they can spot a pattern (e.g. the ay grapheme occurs at the end of words; the commonest spelling for the phoneme followed by t is ate; the commonest spelling for the phoneme followed by k is ake).

4. Ask the children to write a word not on display containing the same phoneme as some of the words listed (e.g. hay).

5. Where there are potentially two possible spellings ask the children to write which grapheme they think might be in a particular word and decide whether they think it is correct when they have looked at it written down.

6. The children then learn the correct spelling.
Learning to spell and practising high-frequency words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>no</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>were</th>
<th>when</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Children should be able to read these words before being expected to learn to spell them.

**Resources**
- Whiteboards and pens, preferably one per child

**Procedure**
1. Write the word to be learned on the whiteboard and check that all the children can read it.
2. Say a sentence using the word.
3. Sound-talk the word raising a finger for each phoneme.
4. Ask the children to do the same.
5. Discuss the letters required for each phoneme, using letter names.
6. Ask the children to ‘trace the shape of’ the letters on their raised fingers.
7. Rub the word off the whiteboard and ask them to write the word on their whiteboards.

Note: Although ending in the letter **e**, **some**, **come** and **have** are not split digraph words. It is easiest to suggest that the last phoneme is represented by a consonant and the letter **e**. It is not possible to show the phonemes represented by graphemes in the word **one**.
Practising spelling two-syllable and three-syllable words

**Resources**
- List of words
- Whiteboards, pens and wipes, or pencil and paper for each child

**Procedure**
1. Say a word (e.g. rescue), clap each syllable and ask the children to do the same.
2. Repeat the clapping with two or three more words.
3. Clap the first word again and tell the children that the first clap is on res and the second is on cue.
4. Ask the children for the sounds in res and write them.
5. Repeat with the second syllable.
6. Read the completed word.
7. Repeat 3–6 with another word.
8. Continue with more words but the children write the words on their own whiteboards.

Practising writing sentences

**Resources**
- Sentence including words you wish to practise

**Procedure**
1. Ask the children to say the sentence all together a couple of times and then again to their partners.
2. Ask them to say it again all together two or three times.
3. Ask the children to tell you the first word.
4. Ask what letters are needed and write the word.
5. Ask about, or point out, the initial capital letter.
6. Remind the children that a space is needed between words and put a mark where the next word will start.

7. Ask the children to say the sentence again.

8. Ask for the next word and ask what letters are needed.

9. Repeat for each word.

10. Ask about or point out the full stop at the end of the sentence.

**Independent writing**

When children are writing, for example in role-play areas, their letter knowledge along with their ability to segment will allow them to make a good attempt at writing many of the words they wish to use. Even though some of their spellings may be partially inaccurate, the experience gives them further practice in segmentation and, even more importantly, gives them experience in composition and makes them see themselves as writers. Children should be able to spell most of the 100 high-frequency words accurately during the course of Phase Five.

---

**Assessment**

(See ‘Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers’, page 16.)

By the end of Phase Five children should:

- give the sound when shown any grapheme that has been taught;
- for any given sound, write the common graphemes;
- apply phonic knowledge and skill as the prime approach to reading and spelling unfamiliar words that are not completely decodable;
- read and spell phonically decodable two-syllable and three-syllable words;
- read automatically all the words in the list of 100 high-frequency words;
- accurately spell most of the words in the list of 100 high-frequency words;
- form each letter correctly.
Bank of words and other materials for use in Phase Five activities

Some new graphemes for reading

Words in italics are high-frequency words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ay</th>
<th>ou</th>
<th>ie</th>
<th>ea</th>
<th>oy</th>
<th>ir</th>
<th>ue</th>
<th>ue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td>clue</td>
<td>cue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>seat</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>sir</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>due</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>bead</td>
<td>joy</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>glue</td>
<td>hue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>scout</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>oyster</td>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>venue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stray</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>cried</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td>Roy</td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clay</td>
<td>proud</td>
<td>tried</td>
<td>treat</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>birth</td>
<td>Prue</td>
<td>pursue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spray</td>
<td>sprout</td>
<td>spied</td>
<td>heap</td>
<td>Floyd</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>rue</td>
<td>queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tray</td>
<td>sound</td>
<td>fried</td>
<td>least</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>flue</td>
<td>statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crayon</td>
<td>loudest</td>
<td>replied</td>
<td>steamy</td>
<td>royal</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>issue</td>
<td>rescue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>denied</td>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>annoying</td>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>tissue</td>
<td>argue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aw</th>
<th>wh</th>
<th>ph</th>
<th>ew</th>
<th>ew</th>
<th>oe</th>
<th>au</th>
<th>ey</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>saw</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>Philip</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>stew</td>
<td>toe</td>
<td>Paul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paw</td>
<td>what</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td>Philippa</td>
<td>chew</td>
<td>few</td>
<td>hoe</td>
<td>haul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>whole</td>
<td>phonics</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>doe</td>
<td>daub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claw</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>whom</td>
<td>sphinx</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>dew</td>
<td>foe</td>
<td>launch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw</td>
<td>why</td>
<td>whoever</td>
<td>Christopher</td>
<td>screw</td>
<td>paw</td>
<td>woe</td>
<td>haunted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawn</td>
<td>whistle</td>
<td>dolphin</td>
<td>crew</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>Saul</td>
<td>turkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yawn</td>
<td>whenever</td>
<td>prophet</td>
<td>brew</td>
<td>mildew</td>
<td>goes</td>
<td>August</td>
<td>chimney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>wheel</td>
<td>phantom</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
<td>jaunty</td>
<td>valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shawl</td>
<td>whisper</td>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>renew</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
<td>author</td>
<td>trolley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawer</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>alphabet</td>
<td>Andrew</td>
<td>Matthew</td>
<td>heroes</td>
<td>automatic</td>
<td>monkey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Known graphemes for reading: alternative pronunciations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>a</strong></th>
<th><strong>e</strong></th>
<th><strong>i</strong></th>
<th><strong>o</strong></th>
<th><strong>u</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acom</td>
<td>fast**</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>path**</td>
<td>what</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apron</td>
<td>pass**</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angel</td>
<td>father**</td>
<td>wasp</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>pint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apricot</td>
<td>bath**</td>
<td>squad</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>blind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bagel</td>
<td>last**</td>
<td>squash</td>
<td>the*</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>grass**</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>recent</td>
<td>kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>after**</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>frequent</td>
<td>grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amy</td>
<td>branch**</td>
<td>wallet</td>
<td>region</td>
<td>behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lady</td>
<td>afternoon**</td>
<td>wander</td>
<td>decent</td>
<td>remind</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* before a vowel

** In the North of England the grapheme a is pronounced the same in hat, fast, etc. The grapheme u is pronounced the same in but, put, etc. Alternative pronunciations for each of these graphemes apply in the South of England only.
### Letters and Sounds: Phase Five

#### ow
- down
- low
- grow
- snow
- glow
- bowl
- tow
- show
- slow
- window
- rowing-boat

#### ie
- pie
- chief
- brief
- field
- shield
- priest
- yield
- shriek
- thief
- relief
- belief

#### ea
- sea
- head
- deaf
- bread
- heaven
- feather
- pleasant
- instead
- breakfast

#### er
- farmer
- dead
- ready
- bread
- heaven
- feather
- pleasant
- instead
- breakfast

#### ou
- out
- you
- could
- mould
- could
- mould
- group
- should
- boulder

#### y
- yes
- my
- try
- why
- dry
- fry
- sky
- spy
- fry
- reply

#### ch
- by
- gym
- try
- mystery
- why
- crystal
- pyramid
- Egypt
- bicycle
- Lynne
- cygnet
- rhythm

#### c
- school
- chef
- Christmas
- Charlene
- chord
- Charlotte
- chorus
- machine
- Chris
- brochure
- chronic
- chalet
- chemical
- headache
- technical

#### g
- cell
- central
- acid
- cycle
- cent
- Cynthia
- success
- December
- accent

#### ey
- money
- they

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Money</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grey</td>
<td>obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prey</td>
<td>survey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Alternative spellings for each phoneme

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ch/</th>
<th>/j/</th>
<th>/m/</th>
<th>/n/</th>
<th>/r/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Fudge</td>
<td>Lamb</td>
<td>Limb</td>
<td>Wren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adventure</td>
<td>Hedge</td>
<td>Bridge</td>
<td>Comb</td>
<td>Wrench</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creature</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Nature</td>
<td>Nature</td>
<td>Nature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signature</td>
<td>Signature</td>
<td>Signature</td>
<td>Signature</td>
<td>Signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Picture</td>
<td>Picture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/s/</th>
<th>/z/</th>
<th>/u/*</th>
<th>/i/</th>
<th>/ear/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listen</td>
<td>House</td>
<td>Please</td>
<td>Please</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whistle</td>
<td>Mouse</td>
<td>Tease</td>
<td>Tease</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glisten</td>
<td>Grease</td>
<td>Ease</td>
<td>Ease</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas</td>
<td>Cheese</td>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castle</td>
<td>Grouse</td>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>Noise</td>
<td>Noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castle</td>
<td>Castle</td>
<td>Castle</td>
<td>Castle</td>
<td>Castle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The phoneme /u/* is not generally used in North of England accents.*
### /ar/ 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>father</th>
<th>half</th>
<th>there</th>
<th>pear</th>
<th>bare</th>
<th>all</th>
<th>four</th>
<th>caught</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lather</td>
<td>calf</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>pour</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>almond</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>naughty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass*</td>
<td>calm</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>fare</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>haughty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path*</td>
<td>qualm</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bath*</td>
<td>lip balm</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last*</td>
<td>palm tree</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grass*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branching*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>hare</td>
<td>wall</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The classification of these words is very dependent on accent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/or/</th>
<th>/ur/</th>
<th>/oo/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lather</td>
<td>calf</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather</td>
<td>almond</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass*</td>
<td>calm</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path*</td>
<td>qualm</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bath*</td>
<td>lip balm</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last*</td>
<td>palm tree</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grass*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branching*</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ur/</th>
<th>/oo/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earn</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pearl</td>
<td>worm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>worth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard</td>
<td>worship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earnest</td>
<td>worthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rehearsal</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### /ai/
- day
- play
- say
- stray
- clay
- spray
- tray
- crayon
- delay

### /ee/
- came
- seat
- make
- read
- game
- race
- treat
- heap
- least
- amaze
- escape

### /igh/
- chief
- brief
- mummy
- valley
- monkey
- glad
-: key
- field
- spied
- money
- belief

### /oa/
- low
- grow
- snow
- glow
- bowl
- tow
- show
- slow
- window
- rowing

### /(y) oo/
- toe
- pole
- home
- woke
- those
- stone
- woke
- note
- phone
- alone

### /oo/
- bone
- cube
- tube
- venue
- value
- pursue
- huge
- huge
- argue
- computer

- cue
- due
- hue
- use
- value
- duke
- huge

- stew
- few
- new
- use
- cute
- knew
- mildew

- glue
- new
- true
- rude
- saw

- June
- flute
- true
- rude
- Sue

- blue
- flute
- true
- rude
- Sue

- chew
- flute
- saw
- flue
- screw

- prune
- grew
- drew
- grew
- plume

- drew
- grown
- brew
- drew
- flew

- drew
- drew
- drew
- flew
- drew

- Prue
- brute
- crew
- crew
- crew

- Prue
- crew
- crew
- crew
- crew

- Sue
- screw
- florist
- flew
- grew

- Sue
- screw
- florist
- flew
- grew

- crew
- crew
- crew
- crew
- crew

- Andrew
- Andrew
- Andrew
- Andrew
- Andrew

© Crown copyright 2007
### /sh/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>special</th>
<th>station</th>
<th>sure</th>
<th>chef</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>official</td>
<td>patience</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>Charlotte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>social</td>
<td>caption</td>
<td>passion</td>
<td>Charlene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artificial</td>
<td>mention</td>
<td>session</td>
<td>Michelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facial</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>mission</td>
<td>Chandry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### New phoneme

### /zh/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treasure</th>
<th>television</th>
<th>vision</th>
<th>pleasure</th>
<th>leisure</th>
<th>beige</th>
<th>visual</th>
<th>measure</th>
<th>usual</th>
<th>casual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Sentences and substitute words for ‘sentence substitution’

(See page 139.)

New graphemes for reading

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paul eats peas with his meat.</th>
<th>beans</th>
<th>reads</th>
<th>cooks</th>
<th>Phil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kay must pay for her new bike.</td>
<td>toes</td>
<td>Jean</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>toy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We can bake a pie today.</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>cake</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The boys shout as they play outside.</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>girls</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They saw that the dog had hurt its paw.</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>tail</td>
<td>stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children like the seaside.</td>
<td>dentist</td>
<td>beach</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>zoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loud sounds can be annoying.</td>
<td>noises</td>
<td>singing</td>
<td>frightening</td>
<td>mountains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mum gave us a few grapes as a treat.</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>punishment</td>
<td>Dad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The girl came home on the train.</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can tie things up with string.</td>
<td>rope</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>glue</td>
<td>ribbon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More reading practice with old and new GPCs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chris found his wallet in the drawer.</th>
<th>shirt</th>
<th>socks</th>
<th>Charlie</th>
<th>saw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soup is a healthy kind of food.</td>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>sport</td>
<td>sort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grown-ups teach us at school.</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>goblins</td>
<td>teachers</td>
<td>home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow and rain are part of our winter weather.</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>frost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can see clowns at a circus.</td>
<td>elephants</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>acrobats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We could fly to Africa in a plane.</td>
<td>ship</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The thief was kept in prison.</td>
<td>robber</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>oyster</td>
<td>jail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We can make models from card.</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td>clay</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cows and sheep may graze in a meadow.</td>
<td>goats</td>
<td>field</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>sail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The puppy was very playful.</td>
<td>kitten</td>
<td>cute</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>hungry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Questions for Yes/no questions
(See page 142)

Could you carry an elephant on your head?
Would you like to wave a magic wand?
Would you crawl into a thorn bush?
Have you ever seen a live crocodile?
Are you ready for school by nine in the morning?
Could a cactus grow in Antarctica?
Would you scream if you saw a snake?

Can magpies perch on clouds in the sky?
Would you put ice-cream in the freezer?
Has a cat got sharp claws?
Do you go to school in the holidays?
Is December a summer month?
Could you fly to Mars on a bike?
Has a space-ship ever been to the moon?
Could you make up a story about a giant?

Examples for ‘Choosing three right answers’
(See page 143)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Which of these are days of the week?</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>September</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which are names for girls?</td>
<td>Heather</td>
<td>Hayley</td>
<td>Sanjay</td>
<td>Philippa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of these are numbers?</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of these can we read?</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>comics</td>
<td>see-saws</td>
<td>books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic lights can be</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of these are parts of the body?</td>
<td>cry</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>elbow</td>
<td>chin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A chef can cook food by</td>
<td>boiling</td>
<td>grilling</td>
<td>flying</td>
<td>frying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What can you put on bread?</td>
<td>jam</td>
<td>butter</td>
<td>cheese</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of these can grow in a garden?</td>
<td>ferns</td>
<td>snow</td>
<td>herbs</td>
<td>bushes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of these could you hold in your hand?</td>
<td>a giant</td>
<td>a jewel</td>
<td>a feather</td>
<td>a penny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Real Treat!

Tom was very happy. It was the weekend and he was off to the beach with Mum and Dad, his puppy and baby Pete.

“Help me pack the green bag,” said Mum. “We need sun cream and lots to eat.”

Tom got into his seat in the back of the car and the puppy got on his knee. Pete held his toy sheep. Off they went. Beep! Beep!

At the end of the street there was a big truck. It had lost a wheel. “Oh, no,” said Tom. “We’ll be here for a week!”

Dad went to speak to the driver to see if he could help. They put the wheel back on. Then Dad said, “I must hurry. We need to get to the beach.”

At last they got to the sea. Tom and Pete had an ice-cream. Mum and Dad had a cup of tea. The puppy went to sleep under a tree.
A Right Mess

The twins’ bedroom was a right mess! Mum had tried everything. Being cross! Being kind! But it just did not help. The twins still did not tidy their room.

Then Mum had an idea. “I think I’ll write a list of things the twins must pick up, and then we can play a game of hide and seek. The twins must find the things and put them in a box. Their room will be tidy!”

This is the list Mum had:

- A crisp bag
- A white sock
- A tie with a stripe
- A cap
- A plastic knife
- A bright red kite

“We like this game of hide and seek,” said the twins. In no time at all the room was quite tidy and Mum was happy.

Then the twins had an idea. “Mum, we’d like to fly this kite on the green.”

“All right,” said Mum, “but you must hold the string tight.”

On the green there was a light breeze and the kite went up, up, up, high in the sky. Then suddenly it came down, down, down…

CRASH! It fell into the duck pond!

The kite was fine, but Mum said, “I think it’s time for tea. Let’s go home.”
Luke and Ruth

It was Saturday and Luke went to play at Ruth’s house. Ruth and her mum lived in the house next to Luke’s house.

“Let’s go outside,” said Ruth as she put her blue boots on. “Do you need boots too?”


“Yes. Can you help me move this big root?” said Ruth. “Then we can sow the seeds.” Luke and Ruth soon had the seeds in the ground and they made the earth smooth on top. “Now we will wait until they grow,” they said.

Two weeks later, Ruth ran to Luke’s house. “Quick! The seeds are growing.” Luke ran round to see if it was true. It was. In the next few weeks they grew and grew and, in June, they had blue flowers.

“Our blue flowers are super,” said Luke.

“The best,” said Ruth.
The Old Pony

Joe, the old pony, was in his field. He was so old and slow that nobody rode him anymore. The wind was blowing. He felt cold and lonely.

Just then, Jazz and Hal rode by on their bikes. They were going home for tea. They felt so sorry for old Joe that they stopped to stroke him.

At tea time they told Dad about Joe.

“Don’t worry,” said Dad. “I know I can help him.”

After tea, Dad went to the shed and got an old green coat and a thin rope. Jazz and Hal got the end of a loaf of bread. “Let’s go,” said Dad.

Dad and Jazz and Hal went back to Joe’s field.

“Hello, old fellow,” said Dad. Quickly, he put the old coat over Joe’s back and tied it on with rope. In no time at all, Joe was as warm as toast!

Jazz and Hal gave Joe some of the loaf to eat. Old Joe was happy at last.
The School Sale

It was the day of the school sale. Mum could not go as she had a pain in her knee, so Gran said she would take Kate and Wayne. They could not wait!

At the school gate, Gran paid 20p to get in. She did not have to pay for Kate and Wayne - it was free for children!

As soon as they were through the gate, Gran gave Wayne and Kate £1 each to spend, and told them not to go too far away.

The sun was shining. “It’s as hot as Spain!” said Gran. “I think I need a cup of tea.”

At the tea stall, a lady put Gran’s tea on a tray, and Gran went to find a place to sit in the shade.

Meanwhile, Kate and Wayne went round the stalls. Kate had her face painted like a rainbow and had a go on the “Name a Teddy” stall. Wayne bought a game of chess and a piece of chocolate cake for Mum. They both had a go on the “Pin the tail on the donkey”. It was quite safe – the donkey was only made of paper!

When the sale was nearly over, Kate and Wayne went back and found Gran fast asleep under the tree. “What a shame,” said Kate, “she’s missed all the fun!”
Could I?

Mr and Mrs Hood had a house by the sea. Mr Hood was a fisherman. When he was away on a fishing trip, Mrs Hood would get very lonely and sad.

“I need a job,” she said to herself. “I like to look at books, I could sell books in the bookshop.”

She went to the bookshop but the people there said “No.”

“This is no good,” Mrs Hood said to herself, “I should stop and think.” Mrs Hood sat and had a good long think and then she said, “I like to cook. I could run a cake shop.”

She began to cook and in next to no time her house was full of the smell of cakes and pies. She put a poster up on the gate that said, “Home-made cakes and pies”. She sold everything she had made.

She told Mr Hood about it when he came home. “I would like to try a cake,” he said, “I’m hungry.”

“I’m sorry,” Mrs Hood said, “I sold out.”
Letters and Sounds: Phase Six
Phase Six
(throughout Year 2)

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching spelling</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing and teaching the past tense</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigating and learning how to add suffixes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching spelling long words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finding and learning the difficult bits in words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning and practising spellings</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application of spelling in writing</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children gaining independence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of the spelling system</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some useful spelling guidelines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding suffixes to words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice examples</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key

This icon indicates that the activity can be viewed on the DVD.
Summary

By the beginning of Phase Six, children should know most of the common grapheme–phoneme correspondences (GPCs). They should be able to read hundreds of words, doing this in three ways:

- reading the words automatically if they are very familiar;
- decoding them quickly and silently because their sounding and blending routine is now well established;
- decoding them aloud.

Children’s spelling should be phonemically accurate, although it may still be a little unconventional at times. Spelling usually lags behind reading, as it is harder. (See Appendix 3: Assessment.)

During this phase, children become fluent readers and increasingly accurate spellers.

READING

At this stage many children will be reading longer and less familiar texts independently and with increasing fluency. The shift from learning to read to reading to learn takes place and children read for information and for pleasure.

Children need to learn some of the rarer GPCs (see Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, Appendix 2, page 19,) and be able to use them accurately in their reading.

A few children may be less fluent and confident, often because their recognition of graphemes consisting of two or more letters is not automatic enough. Such children may still try to use phonics by sounding out each letter individually and then attempting to blend these sounds (for instance /c/-/h/-/a/-/r/-/g/-/e/ instead of /ch/-/ar/-/ge/). This is all too often misunderstood by teachers as an overuse of phonics rather than misuse, and results in teachers suggesting to children that they use alternative strategies to read unfamiliar words. Instead the solution is greater familiarity with graphemes of two or more letters. The necessity for complete familiarity with these graphemes cannot be overstated. The work on spelling, which continues throughout this phase and beyond, will help children to understand more about the structure of words and consolidate their knowledge of GPCs. For example, children who are not yet reliably recognising digraphs and are still reading them as individual letters will get extra reinforcement when they learn to spell words containing the digraphs such as road, leaf, town, cloud, shop.

As children find that they can decode words quickly and independently, they will read more and more so that the number of words they can read automatically builds up. There is a list of the 300 high-frequency words in Appendix 1 on pages 193–195. Increasing the pace of reading is an important objective. Children should be encouraged to read aloud as well as silently for themselves.
Knowing where to place the stress in polysyllabic words can be problematic. If the child has achieved a phonemic approximation of the word, particularly by giving all vowels their full value, the context of the sentence will often provide a sensible resolution; the child should then recheck this against the letters. Working through the word in this way will make it easier for it to be read more automatically in future.

In Phase Six, many children will be able to read texts of several hundred words fluently at their first attempt. Those children who are less fluent may benefit from rereading shorter texts several times, not in order to memorise the texts, but to become more familiar with at least some of the words that cause them to stumble, and to begin to experience what fluent reading feels like.

To become successful readers, children must understand what they read. They need to learn a range of comprehension strategies and should be encouraged to reflect upon their own understanding and learning. Such an approach, which starts at the earliest stages, gathers momentum as children develop their fluency. Children need to be taught to go beyond literal interpretation and recall, to explore the greater complexities of texts through inference and deduction. Over time they need to develop self-regulated comprehension strategies:

- activating prior knowledge;
- clarifying meanings – with a focus on vocabulary work;
- generating questions, interrogating the text;
- constructing mental images during reading;
- summarising.

Many of the texts children read at this stage will be story books, through which they will be developing an understanding of the author’s ideas, plot development and characterisation. It is important that children are also provided with opportunities to read a range of non-fiction texts, which require a different set of strategies. The use of a contents page, index and glossary makes additional demands on young readers as they search for relevant information. In reading simple poems, children need to adapt to and explore the effects of poetic language, continuing to develop their understanding of rhythm, rhyme and alliteration.

From an early stage, children need to be encouraged to read with phrasing and fluency, and to take account of punctuation to aid meaning. Much of the reading now will be silent and children will be gaining reading stamina as they attempt longer texts.

In addition, as children read with growing independence, they will engage with and respond to texts; they will choose and justify their choice of texts and will begin to critically evaluate them.

It is important throughout that children continue to have opportunities to listen to experienced readers reading aloud and that they develop a love of reading.
TEACHING SPELLING

Teaching spelling

Introducing and teaching the past tense

The past tense dealt with in this section is simple past tense, e.g. I looked, not continuous past tense, e.g. I was looking.

Before you teach children to spell the past tense forms of verbs, it is important that they gain an understanding of the meaning of ‘tense’. Since many common verbs have irregular past tenses (e.g. go – went, come – came, say – said) it is often easier to teach the concept of past tense separately from the spelling of past tense forms. Short oral games can be used for this purpose.

For example, a puppet could say Today I am eating an egg – what did I eat yesterday? The response could be Yesterday you ate a sandwich, Yesterday you ate some jam. The puppet could say Today I am jumping on the bed. Where did I jump yesterday? and the response could be Yesterday you jumped in the water, etc. These games can be fitted into odd moments now and then; several children could respond in turn, and the games would also serve as memory training (don’t repeat what’s already been suggested).

Using familiar texts

Procedure

Use a current class text as the basis for discussion about tense.

1. Find extracts of past tense narrative and ask children to describe what is happening in the present tense. For example, use extracts from Funnybones (by Alan Alhberg and Janet Alhberg, published by Puffin Books) such as where the skeletons leave the cellar, climb the stairs and walk to the park.

2. Let the children compare the two versions. Discuss how they are different both in meaning and language.

3. Use the words yesterday and today to reinforce the different meanings.

4. Find bits of present tense dialogue in the text and ask children to retell it as past tense narrative.
Investigating and learning how to add suffixes

Phoneme frame

Purpose

To reinforce understanding and application of the -ed suffix for the past tense

Prerequisite

The children must have an understanding of the grammar of the past tense and experience of segmenting words into phonemes

Resources

For whole-class work

- Set of five-box and six-box phoneme frames drawn on the whiteboard
- Set of five-box and six-box phoneme frames, on laminated card so they can be reused, one per pair of children
- Word cards placed in a bag (e.g. rounded, helped, turned, begged, hissed, wanted, sorted, hummed, waded, washed, hated, greased, lived, robbed, rocked, laughed, called, roasted)

Procedure

1. Pick a word card from the bag and read it out without showing the children.
2. Working with a partner, the children say the word to themselves then segment and count the phonemes. They decide which phoneme frame to use and try writing it with one phoneme in each box.
3. Say Show me as the signal for the children to hold up their frames.
4. Demonstrate how to spell the word correctly using a frame on the whiteboard and ask the pairs of children to check their own spellings.
5. Repeat for about six words and look at the words that have been written. What spelling pattern do they all have? Emphasise that even when the final phoneme sounds different (e.g. jumped), the spelling pattern is still the same. Challenge the children to explain why this is (past tense of verbs). Look closely at the phoneme frames. Sometimes the -ed ending is two phonemes (e.g. wanted) and sometimes only one (e.g. grasped).
Word sort

*Purpose*
- To categorise words according to their spelling pattern

Use this activity to investigate:
- the rules for adding -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ful, -ly and -y, plurals (see pages 189–190)
- how to differentiate spelling patterns (e.g. different representations of the same phoneme; the ‘w special’ – see page 187).

*Resources*

*For whole-class work*
- Set of word cards exemplifying the spelling patterns you are investigating (see ‘Practice examples’, on page 191, for suggestions)
- Reusable sticky pads

*For independent work*
- Different set of word cards, with words tailored to the children’s ability, one per pair or group of three children

*Procedure*

*Whole-class work*
1. Select a word, read it out and attach it to the top of the whiteboard. Underline the part of the word that you are looking at and explain what you are investigating (e.g. how the vowel phoneme is spelt; how the base word has changed).
2. Ask the children to identify other words that follow the same pattern. Challenge them to explain their suggestion and then move the words into the column.
3. When all the words have been identified, start a new column and ask the children to explain what is different about this spelling pattern.
4. If they suggest a word that does not fit the pattern, start a new column and challenge them to find other words that would go with it.
5. When the words have been sorted, ask the children to suggest spelling rules based on what they can see. Note their suggestions so that they can refer to them in independent work.
**Independent work**

1. Provide more word cards for the children to sort, working in pairs or groups of three.

2. The children use the same categories as before and take it in turns to place a word in one of the columns. The other group members must agree.

3. Words that they cannot place can go into a ‘problem’ pile.

4. The group compose a label for each column that explains what the words have in common.

**Plenary**

1. Look back at the rules that were suggested earlier and ask the children whether they were able to apply them when they sorted their own words.

2. Look at the ‘problem’ words and help the children to categorise them. Talk about exceptions to the general rules and ways to remember these spellings.

**Add race**

**Purpose**

- To practise adding -**ing**

Use this activity to revisit the rules for: adding -**ing**, adding -**ed**, adding -**s** and adding suffixes -**er**, -**est**,-**ful**, -**ly** and -**y**. (see pages 189–190)

(The activity is described as if the focus were adding -**ing**. Modify appropriately for -**ed**, -**er**, -**est**, -**y**, -**s**.)

**Prerequisite**

- The children must have investigated and learned the appropriate spelling rules and be able to distinguish long and short vowel phonemes (e.g. /a/ and /ai/, /o/ and /oa/).

**Resources**

For whole-class work

- 18 cards: three sets of six cards – each set gives six verbs that fit one of the three rules of what we have to do to the verb when adding -**ing**: 1. Nothing, 2. Double the final consonant, 3. Drop the e (see ‘Practice examples’ on page 191)

For independent work

- Set of verb cards, three for each rule as described above

- Large sheet of paper with the three columns labelled as above, one per pair or group of three

- Whiteboards and pens, one per child
Procedure

Whole-class work
1. Draw three numbered columns on the whiteboard corresponding to the three possible actions to take when adding -ing: 1. Nothing, 2. Double the final consonant, 3. Drop the e.
2. Revise the rules for adding -ing to a verb.
3. Explain that this game is a race to see which column will fill up first.
4. Shuffle the verb cards and place them face down in front of you.
5. Show the first card. If there are children in the class who may not understand the word, ask someone to think of a sentence using the word (e.g. I smile at my cat).
6. Ask the children to discuss with their talk partners which column the verb belongs in.
7. Ask the children to show the card (or raise the number of fingers) to indicate which column the verb belongs in.
8. If some children show an incorrect card or put the wrong number of fingers up, explore why they made this decision.
9. Place the word in the correct column.
10. Repeat for more verbs. Note which column has filled up first and continue until the next one has filled. Stop the game there.

Independent work
1. The children work in small groups. Each child needs a whiteboard and pen and the group needs a large piece of paper with three columns labelled as above.
2. The verb cards should be placed in a pile, face down in the centre of the table.
3. One child takes a card from the pile and shows it to the group.
4. The children decide which column the word belongs in and try the word on their whiteboards. When all agree, one child records the word in the agreed column on the paper.
5. Another child picks up the next verb card and repeats the process.

Plenary
1. Ask the children to read the words out for each column and check that all groups agree.
2. Ask some children whether there were any words their group disagreed about.
3. If you have looked at adding other endings (e.g. -ed, -y, -est) discuss whether there are similarities or differences between the rules.
Teaching spelling long words

Words in words

Purpose

To investigate how adding suffixes and prefixes changes words

Use this activity to teach and reinforce prefixes and suffixes.

Prerequisite

When you are selecting words for this activity, consider the vocabulary used by the children in your class and select words that they are likely to know. (See also ‘Practice examples’, page 191.) Explore the function of the prefix or suffix using familiar words, then help to expand the children’s vocabulary by asking them to predict meanings of other words with the same prefix or suffix.

Preparation

Prepare lists of the words you want to discuss with children and differentiated sets of words for the children to work with in the independent session.

Resources

- Lists of words
- Whiteboards and pens, one per pair of children

Procedure

1. Show the children two related words, with and without the prefix or suffix. Ask them what they both mean and what has been added to the base word to make the other word. Do the same with three more pairs of words using the same prefix or suffix.

2. Ask the children, in pairs, to make up a sentence for each of two words to share with the class. Draw their attention to the different uses of each of the words.

3. Ask the children to think of other words with the same prefix or suffix and to write the words on their whiteboards. Ask the children to share the words with the class.

4. If it is relevant, show an example in which the spelling of the base word is altered when the suffix is added. Discuss the implications for spelling.
Clap and count

**Purpose**
- To provide a routine for spelling long words

Use this activity for spelling compound words, words with prefixes and other multi-syllabic words.

**Resources**
For whole-class work
- Differentiated sets of multi-syllable word cards, each card showing one word
- Whiteboards and pens, one per child

For independent work
- Prepare differentiated sets of word cards (4–12 per group, depending on the children’s ability)

**Procedure**

**Whole-class work**
1. Say a two-syllable word, clapping the syllables.
2. Do the same with words with three and more syllables including some of the children’s names.
3. Point to two children who have names containing a different number of syllables. Clap one of their names and ask the children which one you are clapping.
4. Clap a two-syllable word and draw two lines or boxes on the whiteboard for each syllable.
5. Ask the children to write down the letters for the phonemes in the first syllable and show you.
6. If they are not all correct, take different versions from the children and discuss them.
7. Repeat with the second syllable.
8. Say another word and ask the children to clap it and draw boxes for the number of syllables on their whiteboards and show you.
9. Discuss deviations in the responses.
10. Ask the children to write down the letters for the phonemes in the first syllable and show you.
11. If they are not all correct, take different versions from the children and discuss them.

12. Repeat with the second and subsequent syllables.

13. Summarise the routine, with the children joining in, to help them to remember it: clap and count the syllables, draw the lines, write the letters.

**Independent work**

1. The children work in groups of up to four to play ‘clap and count, draw, write’ (as above).

2. Shuffle the word cards and put them in a pile, face down in the centre of the table.

3. When it is their turn, each child should take the top word from the pile, read it aloud and put it face down in front of them.

4. The children go through the same routine: clap and count the syllables, draw the lines, write the letters.

5. The card is then revealed and everybody checks the accuracy of their spelling, awarding themselves 1 point for the correct number of syllables and 1 point for each syllable spelt correctly.

6. Repeat until each child has had at least one turn and then add up the scores to determine the winner.

**Plenary**

1. Focus on children applying this strategy ‘silently’ (i.e. without stopping and clapping when trying to work out a spelling).

2. Read out five new words for the children to try and write ‘secretly’ using the routine: clap and count the syllables, draw the lines, write the letters – but they must not give away the number of syllables. You could show them how to tap very quietly with their fingers.

3. Write up the words and support children in checking their words. What are the difficult bits in each of the words? How does this routine help?
Finding and learning the difficult bits in words

Take it apart and put it back together

Purpose
- To help children learn high-frequency and topic words by developing their ability to identify the potentially difficult element or elements in a word (e.g. the double tt in getting, the unusual spelling of /oo/, and the unaccented vowel i in beautiful).

Resources
- Set of large word cards and blank strips of card (for writing explanation sentences)
- Reusable sticky pads

For independent work
- List of high-frequency or topic words and a list of word descriptions with a blank box beside each description

Procedure
1. Introduce the activity by explaining that if we understand why a word is spelt in a particular way, it can help us to remember how to spell that word accurately when we are writing.
2. Write a word on the whiteboard. Ask the children why they think it is spelt like this. Allow some thinking time and then take feedback.
3. Follow the sequence below to ‘take the word apart and put it back together again’.
   - The children say the word out loud and clap the syllables – underline these on the whiteboard.
   - The children count the phonemes and hold up the correct number of fingers. Draw in sound buttons on the whiteboard.
   - The children spot any other distinctive features – note these and/or highlight the particular part of the word.
   - Summarise all the features in a description: the children suggest a sentence orally, you select succinct and accurate ideas and write a description on a strip of card (e.g. their: this word has one syllable, two phonemes and it begins with the letters the just like two related words them and they; wanted: this verb has two syllables, six phonemes, it begins with the ‘w special’ (see page 187) and has an -ed ending for the past tense).
4. Continue with more words so that children get used to the routine.

5. Check the children’s understanding of the descriptions. Give some children the sentence strips and some the cards with the words you have described. Ask them to read their cards.

6. Choose a child to bring a sentence strip out and stick it on the whiteboard. Read the description together and ask the child who has the correct word card to bring it to the whiteboard. The first child checks the word and sticks it on the whiteboard if it matches the description. The other children put their thumbs up or down to show whether they agree or not. Repeat until all the sentences are matched with words.

**Plenary**

1. Ask a child to describe a word. (It could be a word on the list or another word entirely.) Can any of the other children find a word that matches the description?

2. Talk about how this activity can help the children to learn particular spellings. They have taken words apart and looked at distinctive features. This will help them to remember the spellings. Ask each child to choose one word from the list and write it, with the description, in their spelling log. Challenge them to learn it. When they do independent writing they can expect to see an improvement in the spelling of this word.

---

**Learning and practising spellings**

**Memory strategies**

**Purpose**

- To develop familiarity with different strategies for memorising high-frequency or topic words

**Resources**

- Poster of four memory strategies (see next page)
- List of words to be spelt

**Procedure**

**Whole-class work**

1. Introduce the activity by explaining that in addition to knowing how a word is constructed we may need additional aids to memory.
2. Display the poster of four memory strategies and tell the children that it contains three good ideas for helping them to remember spellings, and a final emergency idea (in case nothing else works).

3. Write a word on the whiteboard, ask the children to read it together and clap the syllables.

4. Discuss with the children the features of the word that might make it difficult to remember and which memory strategy might be helpful.

5. Rub the word off the whiteboard and ask the children to write the word.

6. If children made errors, discuss them in relation to the memory strategy.

7. Repeat 3–6 with another word.

8. Write another word on the whiteboard, ask the children to read it and clap the syllables.

9. Ask the children to discuss with their partners which memory strategy they could use, then ask them to learn the word.

10. Rub the word off the whiteboard and ask the children to write the word.

11. Discuss the strategies chosen and their effectiveness for learning the word.

12. Repeat 8–11 with two more words.

13. Finally dictate each word learned during the lesson for the children to write.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategies</th>
<th>Explanations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Syllables</td>
<td>To learn my word I can listen to how many syllables there are so I can break it into smaller bits to remember (e.g. Sep-tem-ber, ba-by)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base words</td>
<td>To learn my word I can find its base word (e.g. Smiling – base smile +ing, e.g. women = wo + men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analogy</td>
<td>To learn my word I can use words that I already know to help me (e.g. could: would, should)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonics</td>
<td>To learn my word I can make up a sentence to help me remember it (e.g. could – O U Lucky Duck; people – people eat orange peel like elephants)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Learning words

The best way of giving children words to memorise is to provide a sentence for children to learn so that they get used to using the target words in context. The sentences could be practised at home (or in time allocated during the school day) and then children can show what they have learned by writing the sentences at the beginning of spelling sessions.

The purpose of the following two routines is for children to:

■ show what they have learned;
■ practise writing words that follow the same pattern or convention;
■ use the words in the context of a sentence;
■ reflect on what they have learned and learn from their errors.

The children are involved in assessing their own learning as they check their work. They are encouraged to explain their decisions about spelling so that they can understand their success and overcome misconceptions. They use their spelling logs to record words that they often have difficulty with.

Routine A

Preparation

■ Select words and devise a sentence for dictation. Write out a list of all the words to be used in the routine, and the final sentence.

Resources

■ Sentence for dictation
■ List of words

Procedure

Routine A is made up of the following five elements.

1. Show me what you know. Test the children on the words they have been learning. Either read the whole sentence and ask them to write it, or read the individual target words.

2. Spell the word. Select five more words that follow the same pattern or convention. Remind the children about the convention or spelling pattern they explored. Explain that they will be able to use what they have learned to try spelling the new words.

3. Read out one word at a time. All the children write it, read what they have written and check that they are happy with it.
4. **Write the sentence.** Dictate a sentence that includes several target words. Break it into meaningful chunks, repeating each string of words several times. Give children time to check what they have written and remind them of the target features (e.g. -ed endings; different spellings of the long vowel phoneme, strategy for remembering a difficult bit).

5. **What have I learned?** Display the list of words for children to use when they are checking their own work. They work in pairs supporting one another in identifying correct spellings and underlining any errors.

Focus on successful strategies, asking what the children have learned that has helped them spell this word correctly. Encourage the children to articulate what they know and how they have applied it. Then focus on some errors and help children to understand why they might have mis-spelt the word – were they tripped up by the difficult bit? Did they forget to apply the rule?

**Routine B**

**Preparation**

- Devise two sentences that include examples of words from this phase and incorporate words from previous phases. Select three words for the children to make into their own sentences. Write out the dictations, and the words as three word cards.

For this activity the children should write their sentences in a notebook so that there is an ongoing record of their progress.

**Resources**

- Two sentences
- Three word cards

**Procedure**

Routine B is made up of the following three elements.

1. **Write the sentence.** Dictate two sentences that include target words and other words needing reinforcement. Break each sentence into meaningful chunks, repeating each string of words several times. Give children time to check what they have written and ask them to look out for words they have been working on. Is there a pattern to follow or a rule to apply?

2. **Create a new sentence.** Read out the three words you have chosen and provide children with a theme, e.g. create a new sentence about children eating lunch using the words wanted, their and shared. Give the children time to write their sentences, read through and check them. Have they used the strategies they have been learning to recall the correct spelling?
One (confident) child could write his sentence ‘in secret’ on the whiteboard. Reveal this sentence and ask the children to read it through. Ask which words are spelt correctly. Analyse any errors and talk about why they might have been made.

3. What have I learned? Display the sentences from the earlier dictation and word cards for the new sentences. Ask children to check their work in pairs. They support one another in identifying correct spellings and underlining any errors.

Possible questions are: Were there words in this dictation that you have mis-spelt before? Did you get them right this time? What strategy did you use to remember the difficult bit? Did you spell the target words correctly in your sentence? Give the children the opportunity to select one or two words to add to their spelling logs.

These are likely to be words that they use regularly and find difficult to spell.

For really tricky words the following process – simultaneous oral spelling – has proved useful for children.

Procedure
1. The children copy out word to be learned on a card.
2. They read it aloud then turn the card over.
3. Ask them to write out the word, naming each letter as they write it.
4. They read aloud the word they have written.
5. Then ask them to turn the card over and compare their spelling with the correct spelling.
6. Repeat 2–5 three times.

Do this for six consecutive days.

Application of spelling in writing

Children’s growing understanding of why words are spelt in a particular way is valuable only if they go on to apply it in their independent writing. Children should be able to spell an ever-increasing number of words accurately and to check and correct their own work. This process is supported through:

- shared writing: the teacher demonstrates how to apply spelling strategies while writing and teaches proofreading skills;
- guided and independent writing: the children apply what they have been taught. This is the opportunity to think about the whole writing process: composition as well as spelling, handwriting and punctuation;
Marking provides the opportunity to see how well individual children understand and apply what has been taught and should always relate to the specific focus for teaching.

- Set clear expectations when the children start to write. Remind them of the strategies, rules and conventions that they can apply. Expectations and marking will reflect the children’s cumulative knowledge but the marking should not go beyond what has been taught about spelling. Ensure that the children know what the criteria for success are in this particular piece of work. For example: *Now that you understand the rules for adding -ed to regular verbs I will expect you to spell these words correctly.*

- Analyse children’s errors. Look closely at the strategies the children are using. What does this tell you about their understanding? For example, a child using *jumpt* instead of *jumped* is using phonological knowledge but does not yet understand about adding *-ed* to verbs in the past tense.

- Provide feedback and time to respond. In your comments to the children, focus on a limited number of spelling errors that relate to a particular letter string or spelling convention. Ensure that the children have had time to read or discuss your feedback and clarify expectations about what they should do next.

- Set mini-targets. Present expectations for independent spelling in terms of simple targets that will apply to all the writing the children do. These targets would generally be differentiated for groups, but it may be appropriate to tailor a target to include specific ‘problem’ words for an individual (e.g., I expect to spell these words correctly in all my writing: *said, they*).

Targets can be written into spelling logs for the children to refer to regularly.
Children gaining independence

- Strategies for spelling during writing. Children need strategies to help them attempt spellings they are not sure of as they are writing, without interrupting the flow of their composition. Aim to build up routines where the children will try different strategies before asking for help (see the poster ‘Things to do before asking someone’ on page 192).

- Using spelling logs. Children can each have a log – ideally in the form of a loose-leaf folder that can be added to – to record the particular spellings they need to focus on in their work. The spelling log can be used in the following two main ways.

  1. As part of the spelling programme: a regular part of the spelling activities involves the children identifying specific words that they need to continue to work on. These could be words exemplifying a particular pattern or convention or high-frequency words. These words are put into the children’s logs with tips on how to remember the spelling.

  2. To record spellings arising from each child’s independent writing: these words will be specific to the individual child and will be those that frequently trip them up as they are writing. These words can be identified as part of the proofreading process and children can be involved in devising strategies for learning them and monitoring whether they spell the target words correctly in subsequent work.

The children should have no more than five target words at a time and these should be reviewed at intervals (e.g. each half-term). The children can look for evidence of correct spellings in their independent writing and remove the word from the list once it has been spelt correctly five times in a row. The teacher can write the child’s spelling target into the log so that the child can refer to it regularly.

Proofreading

Children need to be taught how to proofread their work as part of the writing process. Editing for spelling (or typographic errors) should take place after the writer is satisfied with all other elements of the writing. It is important that teachers model the proofreading process in shared writing.

1. Preparation. Towards the end of a unit of work, after the children have revisited and revised their work in terms of structure and content, sentence construction and punctuation, the teacher selects an example of one child’s work, writes it out and makes a few changes so that it is not immediately recognisable.

2. Shared writing. Read through the work as the children follow, explaining that you are looking for a particular type of spelling error, related to specific recent teaching focuses (e.g. the spelling of -ed endings). Think aloud as you identify each error and encourage the children to go through the following routine.

   - Underline the part of the word that looks wrong and explain why it looks wrong.
   - Try out an alternative spelling.
Ask yourself whether it looks right.

Check from another source (e.g. words around the room, another child, spelling log, dictionary).

Write in the correct spelling.

Repeat this until the target words have been corrected. Are there any patterns in these errors? Is there a strategy that would help the children to avoid the same errors in the future (e.g. consonant doubling after short vowels)?

3. Independent and guided writing. The children repeat the same process for their own writing across the curriculum. Less confident writers can be supported in this process with guided writing sessions.

**Using dictionaries and spelling checkers**

Children should be taught to use a dictionary to check their spelling. By Phase Six, the repeated singing of an alphabet song at earlier phases should have familiarised them with alphabetical order. Their first dictionary practice should be with words starting with different letters, but once they are competent at this, they should learn how to look at second and subsequent letters when necessary, learning, for example, that words starting **al**- come before words starting **an**- and **as**-, and words starting **ben**- come before words starting **ber**-. Knowledge gained in Phase Five of different ways of spelling particular sounds is also relevant in dictionary use: for example a child who tries to look up **believe** under **belee**- needs to be reminded to look under other possible spellings of the /ee/ sound. Having found the correct spelling of a word, children should be encouraged to memorise it.

Unless a first attempt at spelling a word is logical and reasonably close to the target, a spelling checker may suggest words which are not the one required. Children need to be taught not just to accept these suggestions, but to sound them out carefully to double-check whether the pronunciation matches that of the word they are trying to spell.

**Links with handwriting**

Developing a fluent joined style is an important part of learning to spell and the teaching of spelling and handwriting should be closely linked.

- Handwriting sessions. As children are taught the basic joins they can practise joining each digraph as one unit. This can develop into practising letter strings and complete words linked to the specific focus for teaching (e.g. joining **w-a** to support work on the ‘w special’ – see page 187).

- High-frequency words can be demonstrated and practised as joined units (e.g. **the, was, said**).

- Spelling sessions. The children need to see the target words written in joined script as frequently as possible and to practise writing words, for example in dictations and at home using joined script themselves.
Knowledge of the spelling system

In Phase Six children need to acquire more word-specific knowledge. They still need to segment words into phonemes to spell them, but they also learn that good spelling involves not only doing this and representing all the phonemes plausibly but also, where necessary, choosing the right grapheme from several possibilities.

In some cases, word-specific spellings (e.g. sea/see; goal/pole/bowl/soul; zoo/clue/flew/you) simply have to be learned. It is important to devote time in this phase to learning common words with rare or irregular spellings (e.g. they, there, said) as the quantity children write increases and without correction they may practise incorrect spellings that are later difficult to put right.

However, there are spelling conventions or guidelines that generalise across many words and that children should understand. Where there are exceptions these can usually be dealt with as they arise in children’s reading and writing.

Some useful spelling guidelines

1. The position of a phoneme in a word may rule out certain graphemes for that phoneme. The ai and oi spellings do not occur at the end of English words or immediately before suffixes; instead, the ay and oy spellings are used in these positions (e.g. play, played, playing, playful, joy, joyful, enjoying, enjoyment). In other positions, the /ai/ sound is most often spelled ai or a-consonant-vowel, as in rain, date and bacon. The same principle applies in choosing between oi and oy: oy is used at the end of a word or immediately before a suffix, and oi is used elsewhere. There is no other spelling for this phoneme.

Note that it is recommended that teachers should (at least at first) simply pronounce the relevant vowel sounds for the children – /a/., /e/., /i/., /o/ and /u/., /ai/., /ee/., /igh/., /oa/ and /oo/. Later the terms ‘long’ and ‘short’ can be useful when children need to form more general concepts about spelling patterns.

2. When an /o/ sound follows a /w/ sound, it is frequently spelt with the letter a (e.g. was, wallet, want, wash, watch, wander) – often known as the ‘w special’. This extends to many words where the /w/ sound comes from the qu grapheme (e.g. quarrel, quantity, squad, squash).

3. When an /ur/ sound follows the letter w (but not qu) it is usually spelt or (e.g. word, worm, work, worship, worth). The important exception is were.

4. An /or/ sound before an /l/ sound is frequently spelled with the letter /a/ (e.g. all, ball, call, always).
5. English words do not end in the letter v unless they are abbreviations (e.g. rev). If a word ends in a /w/ sound, e must be added after the v in the spelling (e.g. give, have, live, love, above). This may seem confusing, because it suggests that the vowels should have their ‘long’ sounds (as in alive, save and stove) but in fact there are very few words in the give/have category (i.e. words with ‘short’ vowels) — they are mostly common words and are quickly learned.

6. Elisions, sometimes known as contractions, such as I’m, let’s and can’t are usually easy to spell, but children need to know where to put the apostrophe. They should be taught that it marks the place where letters are omitted.

7. Confusions are common between their and there and can persist unless appropriate teaching is given. There is related in meaning and spelling to here and where; all are concerned with place. Their is related in meaning (plural person) and spelling to they and them. To avoid confusing children, experience shows it is advisable not to teach these two similar sounding words there and their at the same time but to secure the understanding of one of them before teaching the other.

An additional problem with the word their is its unusual letter order. However, if children know that they, them and their share the same first three letters, they are less likely to misspell their as thier.

8. Giving vowel graphemes their full value in reading can help with the spelling of the schwa sound. For example, if children at first sound out the word important in their reading with a clear /a/ sound in the last syllable, this will help them to remember to spell the schwa sound in that syllable with the letter a rather than with any other vowel letter.

9. In deciding whether to use ant or ent, ance or ence at the end of a word, it is often helpful to consider whether there is a related word where the vowel sound is more clearly pronounced. When deciding, for example, between occupant or occupent the related word occupation shows that the vowel letter must be a. Similarly, if one is unsure about residance or residence, the word residential shows that the letter must be e.

Note: The i before e except after c rule is not worth teaching. It applies only to words in which the ie or ei stands for a clear /ee/ sound and unless this is known, words such as sufficient, veil and their look like exceptions. There are so few words where the ei spelling for the /ee/ sound follows the letter c that it is easier to learn the specific words: receive, conceive, deceive (+ the related words receipt, conceit, deceit), perceive and ceiling.
During Phase Six, children should also start to learn spelling conventions for adding common endings (suffixes) to words. Most children will have taken words with suffixes in their stride in reading, but for spelling purposes they now need more systematic teaching both of the suffixes themselves and of how the spelling of base words may have to change slightly when suffixes are added. Some grammatical awareness is also helpful here: just knowing that the regular past tense ending is spelt -ed is not enough – children also need to be aware that the word they are trying to spell is a past tense word. Without this awareness, they may, for example, spell hopped as hopt, played as plaid, grabbed as grabd and started as startid – perfectly accurate phonemically, but not correct. Conversely, once they have understood that the -ed ending can sometimes sound like /t/, they may try to spell soft as soffed, unless they realise that this word is not the past tense of a verb. (See ‘Introducing and teaching the past tense’ on page 170).

These are examples of common suffixes suitable for Phase Six:

- **-s and -es**: added to nouns and verbs, as in cats, runs, bushes, catches;
- **-ed and -ing**: added to verbs, as in hopped, hopping, hoped, hoping;
- **-ful**: added to nouns, as in careful, painful, playful, restful, mouthful;
- **-er**: added to verbs to denote the person doing the action and to adjectives to give the comparative form, as in runner, reader, writer, bigger, slower;
- **-est**: added to adjectives, as in biggest, slowest, happiest, latest;
- **-ly**: added to adjectives to form adverbs, as in sadly, happily, brightly, lately;
- **-ment**: added to verbs to form nouns, as in payment, advertisement, development;
- **-ness**: added to adjectives to form nouns, as in darkness, happiness, sadness;
- **-y**: added to nouns to form adjectives, as in funny, smoky, sandy.

The spelling of a suffix is always the same, except in the case of -s and -es.

### Adding -s and -es to nouns and verbs

Generally, -s is simply added to the base word. The suffix -es is used after words ending in s(s), ch, sh and z(z), and when y is replaced by i. Examples include busses, passes, benches, catches, rushes, buzzes, babies. (In words such as buses, passes, benches and catches, the extra syllable is easy to hear and helps with the spelling.) Words such as knife, leaf and loaf become knives, leaves and loaves and again the change in spelling is obvious from the change in the pronunciation of the words.
Adding other suffixes

Other suffixes have just one spelling. As with -s and -es, many can be added to base words without affecting the spelling of the base word. Adding a suffix may sometimes mean, however, that the last letter of the base word needs to be dropped, changed or doubled, and there are guidelines for this. Once children know the guidelines, they can apply them to many different words. Only three kinds of base words may need their last letters to be changed – those ending in:

- an -e that is part of a split digraph (e.g. hope, safe, use);
- a -y preceded by a consonant (e.g. happy, baby, carry);
- a single consonant letter preceded by a single vowel letter (e.g. hop, red, run).

This simplified version of the guideline applies reliably to single-syllable words. Later, children will need to learn that in words of more than one syllable, stress also needs to be taken into account.

General guidelines for adding other suffixes

Children should be taught to think in terms of base words and suffixes whenever appropriate. Suffixes are easily learned and many base words will already be familiar from Phases Two to Five.

1. If a base word ends in an e which is part of a split digraph, drop the e if the suffix begins with a vowel (e.g. hope – hoping; like – liked: the e before the d is part of the suffix, not part of the base word). Keep the e if the suffix begins with a consonant (e.g. hope – hopeful; safe – safely).

2. If a base word ends in y preceded by a consonant, change the y to i before all suffixes except those beginning with i (e.g. happy – happiness, happier; baby – babies; carry – carried). Keep the y if the suffix begins with i, not permissible in English (e.g. baby – babyish; carry – carrying), as ii is not permissible in English except in taxiing and skiing.

3. If a base word ends in a single consonant letter preceded by a single vowel letter and the suffix begins with a vowel, double the consonant letter. Another way of stating this guideline is that there need to be two consonant letters between a ‘short’ vowel (vowel sounds learned in Phase Two – see also the note on page 187) and a suffix beginning with a vowel (e.g. hop – hopped, hopping; red – redder, reddest; run – running, runner).

In all other cases, the suffix can simply be added without any change being made to the spelling of the base word. This means that for words in 1 and 3 above, the spelling of the base word does not change if a suffix beginning with a consonant is added (e.g. lame + ness = lameness; glad + ly = gladly). Similarly, no change occurs if the base word ends in any way other than those mentioned in 1, 2 and 3 above.
### Examples for practising adding the suffixes -s or -es

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word 1</th>
<th>Word 2</th>
<th>Word 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>fizz</td>
<td>hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>circus</td>
<td>fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunch</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>bunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mend</td>
<td>fuss</td>
<td>marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish</td>
<td>goal</td>
<td>dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank</td>
<td>cross</td>
<td>curry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crash</td>
<td>boat</td>
<td>cry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>buzz</td>
<td>puppy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark</td>
<td>melt</td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>stitch</td>
<td>fry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples for practising adding the suffixes -ing, -ed, -s, -er, -est, -y, -en

All the base words need changes made before the suffixes are added.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words ending in -e</th>
<th>Words ending in -y</th>
<th>Words ending in a single consonant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like (ing)</td>
<td>marry (ed)</td>
<td>stop (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride (er)</td>
<td>funny (er)</td>
<td>mad (er)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tame (est)</td>
<td>worry (ed)</td>
<td>skip (ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bone (y)</td>
<td>copy (er)</td>
<td>run (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bake (ed)</td>
<td>hurry (ed)</td>
<td>hop (er)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hike (ing)</td>
<td>messy (est)</td>
<td>nod (ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine (est)</td>
<td>lucky (er)</td>
<td>pad (ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wave (ed)</td>
<td>ferry (s)</td>
<td>hid (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule (er)</td>
<td>carry (ed)</td>
<td>hot (est)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rude (est)</td>
<td>pony (s)</td>
<td>rip (ed)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples for practising adding the suffixes -ing, -ed, -ful, -ly, -est, -er, -ment, -ness, -en

Some of the base words need to be changed before the suffixes are added but some do not.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word 1</th>
<th>Word 2</th>
<th>Word 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spite (ful)</td>
<td>merry (ly)</td>
<td>bad (ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rude (ly)</td>
<td>employ (ment)</td>
<td>flap (ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>white (er)</td>
<td>play (ed)</td>
<td>send (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite (ing)</td>
<td>enjoy (ment)</td>
<td>slim (est)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lame (ness)</td>
<td>silly (ness)</td>
<td>fan (ed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe (ly)</td>
<td>funny (est)</td>
<td>sad (ness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amuse (ment)</td>
<td>obey (ing)</td>
<td>put (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise (ing)</td>
<td>sunny (er)</td>
<td>flat (en)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time (ed)</td>
<td>happy (ly)</td>
<td>bat (ing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use (ful)</td>
<td>stay (ed)</td>
<td>dark (est)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Things to do before asking someone

What can I do if I get stuck on a spelling?
Find another word that will do for now and come back to this one later or even leave a gap.
Or try these three things before you ask someone:

1. Try using phonic strategies. Say the word and segment the phonemes. Split a long word into syllables.

2. Think about other words that sound the same. Can you use what you know about spelling similar words?

3. Look at your spelling log, word banks or displays in the classroom. Can you find the word you want? Try looking for the word in a dictionary.
Appendix 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100 high-frequency words in order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. but</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 100 high-frequency words in phases

#### Phase Two

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decodable words</th>
<th>Tricky words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put (north)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phase Three

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decodable words</th>
<th>Tricky words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phase Four

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decodable words</th>
<th>Tricky words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>went</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>went</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phase Five

Note that some of the words that were tricky in earlier phases become fully decodable in Phase Five

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decodable words</th>
<th>Tricky words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>Mr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>Mrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>put (south)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Next 200 common words in order of frequency

This list is read down columns (i.e. in the list, water is the most frequently used and grow is the least frequently used)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>water</th>
<th>other</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>away</th>
<th>food</th>
<th>air</th>
<th>other</th>
<th>use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>fox</td>
<td>trees</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>way</td>
<td>top</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>eyes</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>we're</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>grandad</td>
<td>dark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>these</td>
<td>looking</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>than</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>than</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>animals</td>
<td>best</td>
<td>better</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>another</td>
<td>didn't</td>
<td>next</td>
<td>gran</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ran</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>lots</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>can't</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>floppy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>that's</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td>baby</td>
<td>really</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>things</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>wish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>eggs</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>something</td>
<td>once</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>please</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>thing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everyone</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>ever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>miss</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>most</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>soon</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>night</td>
<td>park</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>narrator</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>birds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>car</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td>well</td>
<td>couldn’t</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>white</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll</td>
<td>king</td>
<td>coming</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>I've</td>
<td>river</td>
<td>magic</td>
<td>around</td>
<td>liked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouted</td>
<td>every</td>
<td>giant</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>garden</td>
<td>snow</td>
<td>looks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix 2

Letter formation

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Appendix 3

Assessment

Progress check for each phase

Phase 1

By the end of phase 1 children will have experienced a wealth of listening activities including songs, stories and rhymes. They will be able to distinguish between speech sounds and many will be able to blend and segment words orally. Some will also be able to recognise spoken words that rhyme and will be able to provide a string of rhyming words, but inability to do this does not prevent moving on to Phase Two as these speaking and listening activities continue.

Phase Two (up to 6 weeks)

By the end of Phase Two children should:

- give the sound when shown any Phase Two letter, securing first the starter letters s, a, t, p, i, n;
- find any Phase Two letter, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to orally blend and segment CVC words;
- be able to blend and segment in order to read and spell (using magnetic letters) VC words such as: if, am, on, up and ‘silly names’ such as ip, ug and ock;
- be able to read the five tricky words the, to, I, no, go.

Phase Three (up to 12 weeks)

By the end of Phase Three children should:

- give the sound when shown all or most Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes;
- find all or most Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to blend and read CVC words (i.e. single-syllable words consisting of Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes);
- be able to segment and make a phonemically plausible attempt at spelling CVC words (i.e. single-syllable words consisting of Phase Two and Phase Three graphemes);
- be able to read the tricky words he, she, we, me, be, was, my, you, her, they, all, are;
- be able to spell the tricky words the, to, I, no, go;
- write each letter correctly when following a model.
Phase Four  (4–6 weeks)

By the end of Phase Four children should:

- give the sound when shown any Phase Two and Phase Three grapheme;
- find any Phase Two and Phase Three grapheme, from a display, when given the sound;
- be able to blend and read words containing adjacent consonants;
- be able to segment and spell words containing adjacent consonants;
- be able to read the tricky words *some, one, said, come, do, so, were, when, have, there, out, like, little, what*;
- be able to spell the tricky words *he, she, we, me, be, was, my, you, her, they, all, are*;
- write each letter, usually correctly.

Phase Five  (throughout Year 1)

By the end of Phase Five children should:

- give the sound when shown any grapheme that has been taught;
- for any given sound, write the common graphemes;
- apply phonic knowledge and skill as the prime approach to reading and spelling unfamiliar words that are not completely decodable;
- read and spell phonically decodable two-syllable and three-syllable words;
- read automatically all the words in the list of 100 high-frequency words;
- accurately spell most of the words in the list of 100 high-frequency words;
- form each letter correctly.
Assessment tasks

(See the section on assessment in the Notes of Guidance for Practitioners and Teachers, page 16.)

Contents

- Grapheme–phoneme correspondences task
- Oral blending task
- Oral segmentation task
- Non-word reading task

Grapheme–phoneme correspondences task

s, a, t, p, i, n

Securing success from the start for all beginner readers is an obvious but crucially important aim of the Letters and Sounds programme. The first six letters children will learn to read and write at the start of the systematic teaching of phonics in Phase Two are s, a, t, p, i, n. Once learned, these letters provide children with an easy, but very useful, set of phoneme–grapheme correspondences with which to build two-letter and three-letter words.

Purpose

- To assess knowledge of grapheme–phoneme correspondences

Resources

- Grapheme card (see the example below)
- Group assessment sheet with the names of the children entered (see the example on page 201–202)
Procedure
1. Display the grapheme card.

2. For each correct letter, record the date of assessment on the group assessment sheet.

Example grapheme cards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>s</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>t</th>
<th>p</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>m</th>
<th>d</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Example group assessment sheet for grapheme–phoneme correspondences**

**Phase Two**

| Name of child | s | a | t | p | i | n | m | d | g | o | c | k | ck | e | u | r | h | b | f, ff | l, ll | ss |
### Phase Three

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of child</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z, zz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th, th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo, oo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Oral blending task

Purpose
- To assess oral blending

Resources
- Sheet displaying all the pictures of the words to be blended (optional, see 7 below)
- Assessment response sheet for each child (see the example on page 204)

Procedure
1. Use the practice items (see below) to explain the task to the child as follows: *We’re going to play a listening game. I’m going to speak like a robot. I want you to listen carefully and tell me the word I’m trying to say. Let’s practise. The word is c - a - t. What is the robot trying to say?*
2. If the child needs more prompting, say: *It’s a word you know. Listen again.*
3. Proceed with the assessment items.
4. Offer each word in turn, leaving just less than a one-second interval between phonemes and record the child’s first response.
5. Discontinue after three consecutive errors.
6. Praise the child, whether successful or not, for a positive attitude or disposition to the task – for example for ‘having a go’ at a difficult job, sitting still and listening, taking time to think – and comment that good learners do those things.
7. Rather than ask the child to say the word, you could ask the child to point to the correct picture.
Practice items:  c - a - t   m - u - m

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Word to be spoken by the adult</th>
<th>Record response. Tick if correct. If incorrect, record exactly what the child said or did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.  m - a - n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.  s - o - ck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.  c - u - p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.  p - e - g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.  f - i - sh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.  h - a - n - d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.  t - e - n - t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.  f - l - a - g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.  s - p - oo - n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. s - t - a - m - p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oral segmentation task**

Oral segmentation of words into three phonemes and four phonemes.

**Purpose**

- To assess oral segmentation

**Resources**

- Assessment response sheet for each child (see example)

**Procedure**

1. Use the practice items (see below) to explain the task to the child:

   *Now it’s your turn to speak like a robot. I’m going to say a word and I want you to say all the sounds in the word, just like I did in the last game. Let’s practise. The word is ‘cat’. This is how the robot says cat, c-a-t. You do it.*

   *Instead of saying zip, the robot says z-i-p. How does the robot say mum?*
2. Provide the correct response if the child responds incorrectly.

3. Proceed with the assessment items.

4. Offer each word in turn and record the child’s first response.

5. Discontinue after three consecutive errors.

6. Praise the child, whether successful or not, for a positive attitude or disposition to the task – for example for ‘having a go’ at a difficult job, sitting still and listening, taking time to think – and comment that good learners do those things.

Practice items: cat, zip, mum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Word to be spoken by the adult</th>
<th>Record the child’s response. Tick, if correct. If incorrect, record exactly what the child said or did.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>jam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>zip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>net</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>mint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>sand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>gran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>snack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>crash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>dress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Non-word reading task

Purpose
- To assess grapheme recognition
- To assess blending

Resources
- Non-words on a shopping list
- Assessment response sheet for each child (see the example on page 207)

Procedure
1. Use a scenario to put this task in a context for the child, for example a friendly alien came to earth in a space ship. The alien had lists of things to take back to his own planet. This is what was written on the alien’s first list, second list, etc.

2. Say: Can you read the words. Do you think you would be able to help the alien find the things on the list?

3. Ask the child to say the sound for each grapheme and then to blend them to make a ‘word’.

4. Record the sound for each grapheme and the blended word (see the example response sheet on page 207).

5. Stop after three consecutive errors.

Phase 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Word 1</th>
<th>Word 2</th>
<th>Word 3</th>
<th>Word 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>og</td>
<td>pim</td>
<td>reb</td>
<td>cag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td>ket</td>
<td>nud</td>
<td>meck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liss</td>
<td>hin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Phase 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Word 1</th>
<th>Word 2</th>
<th>Word 3</th>
<th>Word 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dar</td>
<td>veng</td>
<td>gax</td>
<td>chee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zort</td>
<td>jigh</td>
<td>hish</td>
<td>yurk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sair</td>
<td>quoam</td>
<td>koob</td>
<td>waiber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kear</td>
<td>doit</td>
<td>fowd</td>
<td>thorden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phase 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Graphemes</th>
<th>Reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plood</td>
<td>dreet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grit</td>
<td>pomp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theest</td>
<td>fowsping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example response sheet for non-word reading task at Phase Two

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Graphemes (e.g. o-g)</th>
<th>Reading (e.g. og)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>og</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ket</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meck</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acknowledgements

Activities based directly on Looking and Listening Pack. © Heywood Middleton & Rochdale Primary Care Trust. Used with kind permission. Full copies of the pack can be purchased from Heywood Middleton & Rochdale PCT Speech and language Therapy Department, Telegraph House, Baillie Street, Rochdale, OL16 1JA.


Special thanks are due to ICAN for their contribution to Phase One.